

لله وحده

صدقه جاريه علي روح ابي وامي و اختي وندي السرکسي و  
ام مستر هشام ابوبکر و ام مستر بيومي غريب والسيد  
عبدالفتاح واموات المسلمين جميعا

ربنا يجعل قبورهم روضه من رياض الجنة

صدقه جاريه عني وعن اولادي واهلي وكل من يحبنا في الله  
صدقه جاريه لكل من له حق عندي ولا استطيع رده او نسيته  
صدقه جاريه عن كل المسلمين والمسلمات

انه ارحم واكرم من ان يعذبنا بذنوبنا

ربي تقبل

شكرا لمن اقتبست منه معلومه في هذه المذكره

# Unit Seven

## Vocabulary

### Health and safety

#### الصحة والامان

By: Mr El Sebael Atteya

|                       |                     |                           |                   |                          |                  |
|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|------------------|
| <b>allergy</b>        | حساسية              | <b>soil</b>               | تربة              | <b>dirt</b>              | فدرة             |
| <b>allergic to</b>    | حساس لـ             | <b>cut</b>                | جرح               | <b>links</b>             | روابط            |
| <b>disease</b>        | مرض                 | <b>killed</b>             | يقتل              | <b>fire</b>              | نار - حريق       |
| <b>dust</b>           | تراب / غبار         | <b>quickly</b>            | بسرعة             | <b>bedding</b>           | الفراش (كسوة)    |
| <b>wrap</b>           | يلف / يغلف          | <b>(do)CPR</b>            | انعاش القلب       | <b>blanket</b>           | بطانية           |
| <b>evacuate</b>       | يفادر / يخلي مكان   | <b>danger (s)</b>         | خطر / مخاطر       | <b>title</b>             | لقب / عنوان      |
| <b>healthy life</b>   | حياة صحية           | <b>emergency services</b> | خدمات الطوارئ     | <b>burn</b>              | يحرق / يحترق     |
| <b>head injury</b>    | إصابة في الرأس      | <b>first aid</b>          | الاسعافات الأولية | <b>hygiene</b>           | النظافة          |
| <b>injured</b>        | مصاب                | <b>breathe</b>            | يتنفس /           | <b>hygienic</b>          | صحي              |
| <b>bottom</b>         | قاع                 | <b>deep cuts</b>          | جروح عميقة        | <b>hygienically</b>      | بطريقة صحية      |
| <b>research</b>       | تظهر الابحاث        | <b>keyboard</b>           | لوحة مفاتيح       | <b>immediately</b>       | في الحال / فوراً |
| <b>be hurt</b>        | يُصاب               | <b>chopping board</b>     | لوحة تقطيع        | <b>at least</b>          | على الأقل        |
| <b>possibility</b>    | احتمالية            | <b>properly</b>           | بطريقة مناسبة     | <b>sneeze</b>            | يعطس             |
| <b>blog post</b>      | مدونه الكترونيه     | <b>kitchen sponge</b>     | ممسحة المطبخ      | <b>question (v.)</b>     | يشك في / يستجوب  |
| <b>chop</b>           | يقطع                | <b>tissue</b>             | منديل ورقي        | <b>report</b>            | تقرير / مدهش     |
| <b>soapy</b>          | صابوني              | <b>regularly</b>          | بانتظام           | <b>DOs &amp; DON'Ts</b>  | ما يجب و مالا    |
| <b>expert in - on</b> | خبير                | <b>extra</b>              | اضافي             | <b>once a week</b>       | ذات اسبوع،       |
| <b>furniture</b>      | اثاث                | <b>warm wet</b>           | دافئة رطبة        | <b>clean up</b>          | يقوم بالتنظيف    |
| <b>cough</b>          | يكح                 | <b>plaster</b>            | دهان / لصقة       | <b>respond to</b>        | يستجيب           |
| <b>separate</b>       | يفصل                | <b>skin</b>               | مشاكل البشرة      | <b>surprising</b>        | مدهش             |
| <b>basic medical</b>  | مساعدة طبية أساسية  | <b>soapy water</b>        | ماء بصابون        | <b>open</b>              | مفتوح            |
| <b>phrase</b>         | عبارة               | <b>running water</b>      | مياه جارية        | <b>back hurting</b>      | ألم الظهر        |
| <b>nearby</b>         | مجاور               | <b>wear gloves</b>        | يرتدي قفازات      | <b>research</b>          | ابحاث            |
| <b>trousers</b>       | بنطال               | <b>touch soil</b>         | يلمس التربة       | <b>the same topic</b>    | نفس              |
| <b>cleaners</b>       | منظفات              | <b>food waste</b>         | بقايا الطعام      | <b>metal part</b>        | الجزء المعدني    |
| <b>replace</b>        | يستبدل              | <b>mild burns</b>         | حروق متوسطة       | <b>electrical cables</b> | كابلات الكهرباء  |
| <b>pets</b>           | حيوانات أليفة       | <b>gardening</b>          | اعمال الحديقة     | <b>wake up</b>           | يستيقظ           |
| <b>more often</b>     | مراراً / مرات عديدة | <b>a separate bin</b>     | سلة منفصلة        | <b>actions</b>           | أفعال            |
| <b>every time</b>     | في كل مرة           | <b>bookshelf</b>          | رف الكتب          | <b>online</b>            | على النت         |
| <b>as often as</b>    | لاكثر عدد من        | <b>pressure</b>           | ضغط               | <b>interpret</b>         | يترجم فوراً      |
| <b>articles</b>       | مقالات              | <b>trust</b>              | يثق               | <b>available</b>         | متاح             |
| <b>avoid</b>          | يتجنب               | <b>waste</b>              | يتلف - فضلات      | <b>blood</b>             | دم               |
| <b>accident</b>       | حادثة               | <b>neighbour</b>          | جار               | <b>helmet</b>            | خوذه             |
| <b>messy</b>          | فوضى                | <b>describe</b>           | يصف               | <b>spread</b>            | ينشر             |

### Definitions

|                  |                                                                             |                            |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>allergy</b>   | when your skin becomes red as you have touched a particular substance       | حساسية                     |
| <b>bedding</b>   | sheets ,covers etc that you put on a bed .                                  | الفراش (كسوة)<br>(السريير) |
| <b>dust</b>      | dry powder consisting of extremely small bits of dirt .                     | تراب / غبار                |
| <b>soil</b>      | the top layer of the earth in which plants grow .                           | تربة                       |
| <b>breath</b>    | to take air into your lungs and send it out again                           | نفس                        |
| <b>emergency</b> | an unexpected and dangerous situation that must be dealt with immediately . | طوارئ                      |
| <b>respond</b>   | to do sth as a reaction to sth that has been said or done .                 | يستجيب                     |

|                 |                                                              |                   |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>danger</b>   | the possibility that someone or sth will be harmed or killed | خطر               |
| <b>bacteria</b> | a very small things that cause diseases                      | بكتيريا           |
| <b>CPR</b>      | sth you do to help someone take air in and out of their body | إنعاش القلب       |
| <b>research</b> | studying sth to find new facts about it                      | بحث               |
| <b>evacuate</b> | to leave a place as it is not safe                           | يغادر / يخلي مكان |
| <b>wrap</b>     | to cover sth with cloth or paper                             | يلف               |
| <b>burn</b>     | damage to the body caused by fire or heat                    | يحرق - يحترق      |
| <b>blanket</b>  | a warm cover on a bed                                        | بطانية            |

### Expressions

|                               |                             |                                      |                    |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>take ...in</b>             | يستنشق الهواء               | <b>think about</b>                   | يفكر في            |
| <b>take ... out</b>           | يُخرج الهواء                | <b>move around</b>                   | يتنقل في الجوار    |
| <b>take ...off</b>            | تَقْلَع / يخلع / يأخذ اجازة | <b>emergency exit</b>                | خروج الطوارئ       |
| <b>evacuate from</b>          | يجلي من                     | <b>complain about</b>                | يشتكى بشأن         |
| <b>belong to ....</b>         | يخص / ينتمي لـ              | <b>tie up</b>                        | يربط               |
| <b>grow in ...</b>            | يتكاثر في (مكان)            | <b>fall on the floor</b>             | يقع على الأرض      |
| <b>protect .... against</b>   | يحمي .... من                | <b>put pressure on</b>               | يضع ضغوط على       |
| <b>protect from</b>           | يحمي من                     | <b>a home for</b>                    | موطن لـ            |
| <b>get angry / dirty</b>      | يغضب / يتسخ                 | <b>full off = filled with</b>        | مملوء بـ           |
| <b>respond to (by - with)</b> | يستجيب لـ                   | <b>in a fire</b>                     | أثناء أى حريق      |
| <b>in response to</b>         | استجابة لـ                  | <b>a building on fire</b>            | مبنى مشتعل         |
| <b>remove bacteria</b>        | يتخلص من البكتيريا          | <b>be lying on the ground</b>        | راقداً على الأرض   |
| <b>contact with</b>           | اتصال مع ...                | <b>on a website</b>                  | على أحد مواقع النت |
| <b>follow the rules</b>       | يتبع القواعد                | <b>agree on</b>                      | يوافق بعد مناقشة   |
| <b>contain bacteria</b>       | يحتوى علي بكتيريا           | <b>break the law</b>                 | يخالف القانون      |
| <b>change bedding</b>         | يغير كسوة الفراش            | <b>stay clean</b>                    | يظل نظيفاً         |
| <b>give medical care</b>      | يقدم رعاية صحية             | <b>have an allergy to</b>            | لديه حساسية تجاه   |
| <b>give advice</b>            | يعطى / يسدى نصيحة           | <b>cardiopulmonary resuscitation</b> | إنعاش رئوي         |
| <b>receive advice</b>         | يتلقى نصيحة                 | <b>check his breath</b>              | يفحص تنفسه         |

### Antonyms & Synonyms

| Word               | Synonym                    | Antonym                     |
|--------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Full مليء          | filled / crowded / busy    | empty / hungry / thin       |
| Dirty قذر          | muddy / mean / dishonest   | clean / decent / moral      |
| Bottom اسفل        | base / foot / underneath   | top / surface               |
| at least علي الاقل | not less than              | utmost                      |
| Wrap يلف           | cover / fold / surround    | uncover / reveal / disclose |
| Evacuate يخلي مكان | empty / remove / abandon   | remain / continue / stay    |
| Burn يحرق          | light / heat / hurt / pain | freeze                      |
| Chop يقشر          | cut / divide / hack        | join / unite                |

## Language Notes

- 1- **abroad** علي متن سفينة و طائرة - **board** لوح سبورة - **broad** واسع - **abroad** في الخارج
- 2- **soil:** تربة خصبة - These plants only grow in a muddy soil.  
**ground:** أرض (خارج المنزل) - Don't sit on the ground. You'll get wet.  
**floor:** أرضية (المنزل) / طابق / دور - He lives in a flat on the second floor.  
**dust:** تراب / غبار (بالبيت / ذرى) - We should remove this dust from houses.
- 3- **like** مثل  
 - she is **like** her mother .  
 - What **is** the weather **like** ? It is windy .  
 - He wrote a lot of novels **like** " the storm".  
 - She **doesn't like** potatoes .  
 - **like** تحب  
 - **likely** محتمل ( tickets are likely to be expensive ) // **unlikely** غير محتمل
- 4- **Hygiene** النظافة الشخصية ( **personal cleanliness** ) / **hygienic** نظيف ( clean and free of bacteria )  
 - **sanitation** النظافة العامة ( **public cleanliness** ) / **sanitary** نظيف وصحي ( clean and healthy )
- 5- **Neighbour** جار / **neighbouring** مجاور / **neighbourhood** الجوار / **neighbourly** متعاون  
 • My **neighbour** is very kind. • We visited the **neighbouring** town.  
 • This **neighbourhood** has a nice park. • It was **neighbourly** of them to help us move.
- 6- **Complain** يشكو من شيء // **complain to** يشكو الي // **complain about** يشكو من شيء  
 - My friend **complained to the manager about** his colleagues' treatment.  
 - She **complained to her doctor** of a severe headache.
- 7- **allow** + مفعول + **to** المصدر  
 - **let** + مفعول + المصدر  
 - **cause** + مفعول + **to** المصدر  
 - **make** + مفعول + المصدر  
 - **help** **to** + مفعول / **help** ..... مفعول + مصدر - **help** **with** + شيء مفعول  
 She **helped** women (**to**) succeed.  
 He **helped** me **with** homework.  
 - I can't help **watching** today's match.  
 - I spent three hours **asleep** / **watching** this film.  
 - The policeman stopped him **escaping**.  
 - We should keep our food clean and healthy.
- 8- **other** آخر - آخرون (صفة تتبع باسم)  
 - **other** الآخر - I saw two boys. One of them was tall. **The other** was short.  
 - **others** الآخرون (ضمير تتبع بفعل)  
 - **another** آخر : إضافي / مختلف (صفة تتبع باسم)  
 - He enjoyed his stay in Aswan, so he decided to stay there **for another two weeks**.  
 - I don't like this dress. Could I buy **another one**?
- 9- **contain** (يحتوي على (ما يوجد داخل شيء ما)  
 - **include** (يشتمل على (جزء من كل ولا يمكن فصله)  
 - **consist of** (يتكون من كل الأجزاء)  
 - What does this box **contain**?  
 - The list **includes** your name.  
 - What does this dish **consist of**?
10. **When** + **v-ing** ... عادة / حقيقة - **When driving**, you must stick to the right.  
 - **On** + **v-ing** ... لمرة واحدة - **On seeing Hani**, I told him what happened.







**Research** البحوث has **shown** that **contact** with **pets** الحيوانات الأليفة early in life can protect you against **allergies** حساسية. But animals can also carry bacteria. If you touch your pet, you shouldn't touch anything **else** until you've washed your hands.

#### 6. Stay clean in the garden:

You should wear **gloves** جوارتي if you're going to touch **soil** in the garden because it can **contain** bacteria. You should wash your hands when you've finished **gardening**, too.

#### 7. Don't forget to keep your bins clean:

A lot of bacteria can **grow** in your bin. You shouldn't leave your **bin** open. لا تترك سلة القمامة مفتوحة.

#### Hygiene rules around the world قواعد النظافة حول العالم

- In the **UK**, you must put your food **waste** فضلات in a **separate** bin سلة منفصلة. In Thailand, you must take your shoes off before going into someone's house.
- In the **USA**, you should **offer** to help clean up after dinner at a friend's house.

#### Dangerous Trousers!

Research has shown that you should only wear a **pair of trousers** بنطلون for one day. Bacteria can **grow quickly in** your trousers, so it's a bad idea to wear them for more than one day.

#### Always wash your hands!

Research has shown that people who wash their hands **every time** they **come home** from outside don't become ill as often as people who don't.

How are you? I'm well, but I'm writing to ask for some advice. Do you remember my **neighbour** جار, Mrs Zeinab? She had an **accident** last year and now she doesn't go out much. It isn't easy for her to clean. I went to her flat yesterday and the bins were **full**. The floor and kitchen were dirty, too. She **complained** يشتكي about her **back** hurting يؤلم and I think she needs help, but I have a lot of exams **coming up** امتحانات كثيرة قريبة. What do you think I should do?

### **WORK-BOOK TEXTS**

Most people like to keep their homes clean, but there are many places that we don't think about and so they become full of **dirt** فذارة and bacteria. Research shows that the **deep cuts** جروح عميقة in **chopping boards** ألواح التقطيع are often a home for bacteria because people don't clean them **properly**. Bacteria often move around our homes when we touch things, so phones, tablets and computer keyboards often have a lot of bacteria on them, too. **However**, bacteria **really** love warm, **wet** places and so your kitchen **sponge** سفنجة المطبخ probably has more bacteria than anything else in your home. Experts say that it's most important to wash our hands **regularly** بانتظام. If we **touch** animals, we should wash our hands, and we need to use a tissue when we **sneeze** to stop the bacteria **spreading** ينتشر in the air. They suggest using plastic chopping boards and giving them an **extra** clean once a week. We should **replace** يستبدل kitchen sponges every two weeks, and we can buy **special cleaners** منظفات خاصة for phones, tablets and computers.

How are you? I hope you had a good weekend at the beach. Samy told me about the **argument** جدال you had with Hany. I think it would be a good idea to say that you are sorry for getting angry. Stay **calm** and **explain** that he should ask you before he **borrow** يستعير your things. I'm sure he will **realise** يدرك that he **made** a **mistake** and he will say sorry too. Why don't you talk to him tomorrow? I **suggest talking** to him in the morning because he is usually busy on Sunday afternoons. Now I hope you can help me with my problem. Do you remember that I was **planning to clean** my house at the weekend? Well, I was busy and I forgot about it! The problem is that my parents are coming home tomorrow and the house is **really dirty**. There's dust **everywhere** and there's a **strange smell** رائحة غريبة in the kitchen! What should I do? Help!

## Video Script

We need food to live, but if our food isn't prepared **hygienically** صحياً, we can have some **serious health problems**. That's the reason why food **hygiene** نظافة is very important, both in restaurants and shops, and at home. Before you start cooking, you must wash your hands, so that there's no **bacteria** on them. If you have long hair, you should **tie it up** يربط so no hairs will go into the food you're cooking. After that, you can take your **ingredients** مقادير, knives سكاكين and other **equipment** معدات and start preparing the food. You must wash fruit and vegetables first. You mustn't touch the **metal part** of the knife while you're using it.

on unit : 7 (Voc.)**Choose the two correct answers: Vocabulary**

- Our army **evacuates** every metre looking for the terrorists. The synonym of " **evacuate** "
  - remain
  - uncover
  - understand
  - abandon
  - empty
- Famous shops always wrap the presents beautifully. The synonym of " **wrapped** " is.....
  - remained
  - covered
  - confused
  - tidied
  - folded
- On feasts most clothes are **available** in shops. The synonyms of "available" are .....
  - affordable
  - obtainable
  - agreeable
  - incredible
  - accessible
- Students should read the questions clearly to **answer** them correctly. " **Answer** " means
  - avoided
  - replied
  - responded
  - insulted
  - rejected
- The bully's behavior is messy . The synonyms of " **messy** " are .....
  - tidy
  - clean
  - untidy
  - disordered
  - disappeared

**1- Choose the correct answer:**

- We can no longer have confidence in the quality of the air we .....
  - breath
  - breeze
  - breathe
  - breathing
- You should put your rubbish in the..... and clean it as there is a lot of bacteria inside.
  - pin
  - bin
  - ban
  - bit
- Most people nowadays are aware of some of the ..... rules of healthy living.
  - basic
  - base
  - boss
  - please
- It's illegal to use the fire alarm except in case of .....
  - fluency
  - allergy
  - frequency
  - emergency
- A few years ago, she ..... a serious lung disease.
  - improved
  - developed
  - provided
  - supplied
- My friend was given ..... by a medical doctor to save his life.
  - CPR
  - BCE
  - DVD
  - USA
- Restaurants are closed if they fail to maintain minimum standards of .....
  - sanitary
  - hygiene
  - infection
  - healthy
- There were four or five boxes ..... toys and books.
  - containing
  - consisting
  - including
  - sustaining
- Plants need sunlight, water and good ..... to grow well.
  - tile
  - soil
  - earth
  - floor
- My mum tells me to change the ..... on my bed once a week.
  - carpet
  - curtain
  - bedding
  - towel
- I can't stop sneezing العطس because I have an ..... to your pets.
  - allergy
  - ache
  - alley
  - allergens
- Bacteria like to..... in warm, wet places like a kitchen sponge.
  - plant
  - make
  - grow
  - soil
- Protestors المحتجين threw stones at police, who ..... with rubber bullets.
  - amended
  - mended
  - intended
  - responded
- Air ..... has reached dangerous levels in some cities.
  - pollution
  - population
  - expression
  - evacuation
- Mos people were not aware of the ..... of smoking on their health.
  - safety
  - security
  - breath
  - danger



16. There were clouds of ..... in the distance as the truck approached يقترب .  
 a. cluster                      b. master                      c. mystery                      d. dust
17. Don't ..... any more wood; we've got enough.  
 a. shed                      b. sob                      c. cup                      d. chop
- 18-The town is cut off from .....with the outside world.  
 a-contact                      b-contract                      c- connect                      d- communicate
- 19- The government must give a due care to .....research .  
 a- sociable                      b-scientist                      c- scientific                      d-culture
- 20 - .....is to send people away from a dangerous place to a safe place .  
 a- Evaluate                      b- Evacuate                      c- Appreciate                      d-Demolish
21. I took a long ..... before speaking again.  
 a. breathe                      b. breath                      c. breeze                      d. breathing
22. You must leave immediately. You're in great ..... here.  
 a. illness                      b. danger                      c. risky                      d. safety
23. I have an ..... to smoke of cigarettes.  
 a. alligator                      b. alacrity                      c. allergy                      d. energy
24. Environmental groups want a total ..... on the dumping of nuclear waste. دفن النفايات النووية  
 a. promotion                      b. prohibition                      c. cultivation                      d. proportion
25. We should wear ..... on your hands on dealing with birds to protect yourself.  
 a. helmets                      b. socks                      c. gloves                      d. trousers
26. My mother coughed and ..... as while the maid was cleaning the house as it was dusty.  
 a. realized                      b. released                      c. squeezed                      d. sneezed
27. On returning from our holiday, the house was dirty as there was .....on all the furniture.  
 a) mud                      b) soil                      c) dust                      d) wind
28. Parents should ..... love among the members of the family.  
 a. publish                      b. spread                      c. print                      d. remove
29. We shouldn't ..... with our parents eben if they are not right.  
 a. urge                      b. rage                      c. enlarge                      d. argue
30. The drivers driving dangerously must lose their.....as a punishment.  
 a. prohibitions                      b. credits                      c. allowances                      d. licences
31. We should get the umbrella or you'll get ..... .  
 a. witty                      b. pet                      c. wet                      d. wood
32. Mothers ..... onions well and cook it in oil before adding other foods.  
 a. cup                      b. chop                      c. solve                      d. direct
33. We ..... the walls with fine curtains to beautify them..  
 a. suffered                      b. complained                      c. shaved                      d. covered
34. The ..... of her new book is attractive, so most people want to read it.  
 a. address                      b. title                      c. motel                      d. terrible
35. Scientists don't know what ..... volcanoes to happen.  
 a. makes                      b. lets                      c. reasons                      d. causes
36. We should keep our .....clean and healthy ,especially in winter.  
 a. leather                      b. skin                      c. scout                      d. leader
37. A healthy lifestyle includes having a nutritious diet وجبات مغذية and good personal ..... .  
 a. title                      b. emergency                      c. fantasy                      d. hygiene
38. The authorities did several air ..... for saving the survivors of the crash.  
 a. researches                      b. searches                      c. curses                      d. verses
39. Smoking can seriously damage your ..... .  
 a. sound                      b. sane                      c. health                      d. well
40. Toyot's cars have a reputation سمعة for ..... and reliability.  
 a. safety                      b. price                      c. security                      d. risks
41. When his friends laughed at his clothes, he went away with ..... pride.  
 a. flying                      b. injured                      c. safe                      d. speedy

- 
- 10

- a. saved                      b. rescued                      c. killed                      d. cured
69. Girls and boys have to sleep in ..... rooms.
- a. despair                      b. desperate                      c. promising                      d. separate
70. The ground was .....due to the rain.
- a. vet                      b. wet                      c. shit                      d. wit
71. It isn't yet known whether these chemicals are ..... to humans.
- a. dangerous                      b. fabulous                      c. fascinating                      d. attending
72. The policeman asked people to stay ..... as help was on the way.
- a. calm                      b. claim                      c. column                      d. cattle
73. Because of severe cold , my chest felt painful, and I was ..... uncontrollably.
- a. weaving                      b. coughing                      c. covering                      d. raffling
74. She ..... that she never had any time to herself.
- a. applied                      b. complemented                      c. complimented                      d. complained
75. The body often ..... to stress by becoming ill.
- a. responds                      b. calls                      c. answers                      d. asks
76. He is lazy and hardly studies, but at ..... he gets a few marks in his tests !
- a- last                      b-latest                      c-list                      d-least
- 77- The possibility that someone or something will be harmed or killed is called .....
- a- danger                      b- dangerous                      c-generosity                      d- generous
- 78- Ambulances drive very fast when there is a/an .....
- a- urgent                      b-emergent                      c-dangerous                      d-emergency
- 79-Maids should clean the bathroom .....not to cause danderous accidents
- a. flower                      b. flour                      c floor                      d.flat
- 80-Don't make too much noise. The baby is .....
- A – sleep                      b- asleep                      c- sleepily                      d-sleeper
- 81- Be quiet , I want tolisten to the .....of the president speech .
- a- submit                      b- translator                      c-announcer                      d-interpreter
- 82-The room filled with smoke, and it was becoming difficult to .....
- a- breeze                      b- breathing                      c-breathe                      d-breath
- 83- Because hifg temperatures , large areas of the forests are reported to be ..... Fire
- a- in                      b- on                      c- for                      d- to
84. The government has promised to spend more on.....and education.
- a. wealth                      b. healthy                      c search                      d. health
- 85 You should always take your shoes.....at the door.
- a. off                      b. of                      c turns                      d. place
- 86) She's doing .....into the connection between crime and poverty.
- a. recommendations                      b. decisions                      c. research                      d. suggestions
- 87) .....are a very small living things, some of which cause illness or disease.
- a.Diseases                      b. Bacterium                      c medicines                      d. Bacteria
- 88-Their neighbours complained ..... their constant loud music.
- a- of                      b- about                      c- for                      d- to
- 89-This ..... makes it illegal to smoke in public places.
- a.luck                      b.lawyer                      c. law                      d. low
- 90- Physical exercise can ..... you against heart disease.
- a-provide                      b-prevent                      c-produce                      d-protect
- 91-Studentsare required to attend school .....
- a. regularity                      b. regular                      c. irregular                      d. regularly
- 92-The seriously ..... people in the accident were evacuated by air ambulance
- a. injure                      b. injured                      c. injury                      d. harmful
- 93-The drug is a useful form of pain relief for many ..... conditions.
- a. medical                      b. medicine                      c medically                      d.cures
94. Famous people don't often.....to fans' emails.

- a. answer                      b. respond                      c. receive                      d. sent
- 95- People were ..... all over the place as if it were the heart of allergy season.
- a. sneezing                      b. freezing                      c. breezing                      d. tweezing
- 96- Parking is readily ..... near the station entrance.
- a) valuable                      b) available                      c) valid                      d) availability
- 97- Air ..... is usually high in good weather and low in bad weather.
- a- measure                      b- treasure                      c- pressure                      d- pressed
- 98- The car should not be parked there so the police will *have* it.....
- a- placed                      b- removed                      c- cleaned                      d- serviced
- 99- The farmers use both animal and human ..... as fertilizer.
- a. waste                      b. letter                      c. taste                      d. waist
- 100- My brother has a lot of courses and enough practice to become an .....
- a. expert                      b. export                      c. experience                      d. airport
- 101- Ayman took a deep ....., then jumped into the pool.
- a. breeze                      b. breathe                      c. breathless                      d. breath

## Grammar

### MODAL VERBS OF NECESSITY, PROHIBITION AND LACK OF NECESSITY

الأفعال المساعدة الدالة على الضرورة و التحريم و غياب الضرورة

#### 1- Have to / Has to

مضطّر أن

- تستخدم (Have to / Has to) للتعبير عن إلزام مفروض علينا وليس أماننا اختيار

**- Have to / Has to = It is necessary to do.... ( We have no other choice)**

- You **have to show** your passport when **you leave the country**.
- I **can't go out**. I **have to work**.                      - My children **have to go to school** next year.

- يمكن استخدام **have to** في الأزمنة المختلفة (ما عدا الأزمنة المستمرة)

- I **had to work** six days a week. = -It **was necessary for me to work** six days a week.
- My flight is at six in the morning. I'll **have to get up early**.
- **Have you ever had to go** to hospital?

- تستخدم (do / does) مع (Have to / Has to) في السؤال و النفي

- **Do you have to put on** a uniform at school?
- She **doesn't have to buy** a new dictionary for school?

- يمكن أن نستخدم (have got to / has got to) بدلا من (have to / has to)

- I **have got to go** to work on time.
- She is late for the meeting, she **has got to take** a taxi.

- نستخدم (have got to / has got to) في السؤال بدون فعل مساعد

- **Have you got to be** at the office every day?
- **Has that man got to** carry all the boxes by himself?

#### 2- Must = it is necessary to .....

يجب أن

- تستخدم **Must** للتعبير عن ضرورة عمل شيء و تستخدم لتقديم نصيحة قوية لشخص أو دعوة أو نذكر أنفسنا بضرورة عمل شيء ما

- You **must come** home before 8 o'clock.                      (Necessity)
- They **must come** and have lunch with us.                      (a warm invitation)
- You **must wash** your hands before you eat.                      (strong advice)
- We **must buy** souvenirs for our friends here.                      (a strong reminder to ourselves)

- لاحظ استخدام **Must** للتعبير عن الضرورة في المضارع والمستقبل

- I **must go** now.

- I **must see** my doctor **tomorrow**.

- تستخدم **Must** في السؤال بدون فعل مساعد وتأتي في بداية السؤال:

- **Must he send** the e-mail now?

- تستخدم **have / need to** غالبا عند وجود ضرورة لسبب خارج عن ارادة المتحدث :

- We **have to go** to school today. We have important exams.

- والتعبيرات التالية تساوي استخدام **must / have to** :

- It's necessary ( for you ) to + Inf

- It's a rule.

- It's a necessity ( for you ) to + Inf

- You are obliged to + Inf

**3- Had to : It was necessary to do.....**

اضطر أن

- تستخدم **(Had to)** للتعبير عن إلزام و ضرورة في الماضي

- We **had to do** a test at school today.

- We **had to take** a taxi as it **was raining** heavily.

**4- Mustn't : It is necessary NOT to do.....**

يجب ألا

- تستخدم **Mustn't / Must not** للتعبير عن أن شيء ممنوع أو غير مسموح به أو تترتب عليه نتيجة سيئة إذا قمنا به

- **Mustn't = (be) not allowed = (be) not permitted to = (be) banned =**

**(be) prohibited = (be) forbidden to**

- You **mustn't park** here. **It is not allowed.**

- You **mustn't smoke** in hospitals. = You **aren't allowed to smoke** in hospitals.

= You **aren't permitted to smoke** in hospitals. = you **are forbidden to smoke** in hospitals.

= You are **banned from smoking** in hospitals. = You **are prohibited from smoking** in hospitals.

- ويمكن أن تبدأ الجمل بالشيء الغير مسموح به

- Smoking **is not allowed** in hospitals.

- Parking **is forbidden** here.

**5- Don't / Doesn't have to / Don't / Doesn't need to / needn't :**

**It is NOT necessary to do.....**

غير مضطر - لا داعي أن

- She isn't late for school so she **doesn't have to / needn't hurry**.

- When you are on holiday, you **needn't go to bed** early.

- She **doesn't have to work** on Saturday.

**6- - Didn't have to = didn't need to = It wasn't necessary to..., so we didn't**

لم نضطر أن

- تستخدم هذه الأفعال للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في الماضي (حدث لـ يتم في الماضي لأنه لم يكن ضروريا)

- We **didn't have to go** to school **yesterday**. It **was a holiday**.

- I **didn't have to do** the shopping **yesterday**. My brother **did it**.

**7- Needn't have + PP. : It wasn't necessary to....., but we did**

- يستخدم هذا الفعل للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في الماضي (حدث تـ في الماضي على الرغم من كونه لم يكن ضروريا)

- You **needn't have brought** your umbrella. **It's not going to rain.**

- لاحظ الفارق في المعني في الجمل الآتية

- I **didn't have to buy** more bread. We **already have a lot.**

**(I didn't buy bread because we have some.)**

- I **needn't have bought** more bread. We **already have a lot.**

**(I bought bread, but it was not necessary because we have some.)**

- في حالة التعبير عن الضرورة في المستقبل نستخدم **must / have to / will have to**

- I **have to get up** early tomorrow.

- I'll **have to send** the fax tomorrow.

- لاحظ الفرق بين استخدام **need to** كفعل ناقص واستخدام **need** كفعل عادي بمعنى يحتاج أو يتطلب

- This job **needs computer skills**. = I **need to finish** the job early. = I **must finish** it early.

### 8- should + Inf = ought to + Inf

تستخدم should للتعبير عن اقتراح أو رأي المتكلم في ما هو أفضل، كما تستخدم لإعطاء نصيحة (في الأمور الشخصية والآداب والارشادات العامة) بمعنى هذا أفضل من غيره :

- You **should take** exercise.
- You **ought to help** your father.
- You **should travel** by plane. It's much faster.
- He **should join** a sports club. It will help him to keep fit.
- **Should we take** a rest after school? What **should we do**?

والتعبيرات التالية تساوي استخدام should :

- If I were you, I'd + Inf ...
- It is advisable to + Inf
- I advise you to + Inf
- I suggest + v-ing
- You'd rather + Inf
- You'd better + inf
- It is desirable to + Inf
- It is a good idea (for you) to + Inf
- It would be a good thing to + Inf
- It's important ( for you ) to + Inf
- You'd **rather eat** fresh food. It's healthier.
- We **suggest inviting** all our friends to our party next week.

### 9- Shouldn't + inf = oughtn't to + inf

وتستخدم shouldn't للتعبير عن اقتراح أو نصيحة بعدم فعل شيء أو رأي المتكلم في ما هو ليس من الصواب فعله (الارشادات العامة):

- You **shouldn't eat** with dirty hands.
- You **oughtn't to smoke**.

والتعبيرات التالية تساوي استخدام shouldn't :

- It is not advisable to + Inf
- It's inadvisable to + Inf
- I suggest not + v-ing
- I advise you not to + Inf
- It's not a good thing to + Inf
- If I were you, I wouldn't + Inf .....

### 10- Should have+ pp = ought to have +pp للتعبير عن اللوم والعتاب في الماضي نستخدم

- You **should have studied** with understanding
- I **shouldn't have wasted** my time.
- He suffered from a lung disease. He **shouldn't have smoked** .

## Exercises

### Mr El Sebaei Grammar Exercises

### Mr El Sebaei تمارين الوحدة السابعة

**Choose the correct answer :**

- 1- You ..... eat too much salt.  
a) should                      b) must                      c) shouldn't                      d) mustn't
- 2- When driving, you ..... always stop at the red light.  
a) should                      b) must                      c) shouldn't                      d) mustn't
- 3- We ..... to have different bins everywhere for food waste.  
a) should                      b) must                      c) ought                      d) mustn't
- 4- There's a lot of dust on the bookshelf. You ..... clean your room more often.  
a) should                      b) must                      c) need                      d) have
- 5- We ..... drop any food on the floor in the library.  
a) needn't                      b) oughtn't                      c) shouldn't                      d) mustn't
- 6- I think you ..... keep a person still if he or she has broken his or her arm.  
a) ought                      b) must                      c) 'd better                      d) shall



- 7- You ..... talk when the teacher is explaining things to you.  
a) should                      b) must                      c) oughtn't                      d) mustn't
- 8- I ..... breathe here. Please, open the windows.  
a) can't                      b) must                      c) shouldn't                      d) mustn't
- 9- You ..... wash your hands after working in the garden.  
a) should                      b) need                      c) shouldn't                      d) mustn't
- 10- You ..... eat food after it falls on the floor.  
a) should                      b) must                      c) shouldn't                      d) mustn't
- 11- It's better ..... your keyboard frequently.  
a) clean                      b) cleaning                      c) to clean                      d) to cleaning
- 12- You ..... drive a car without holding a driving licence. It's against the law.  
a) oughtn't                      b) needn't                      c) shouldn't                      d) mustn't
- 13- It's .....to wash your hands very carefully with soap and a lot of water.  
a) banned                      b) desirable                      c) forbidden                      d) prohibited
- 14- You ..... clean your table even if it looks clean.  
a) are allowed                      b) must                      c) need                      d) should
- 15- When you cook frozen food, you ..... heat it to about 75°C or more.  
a) need                      b) must                      c) may                      d) ought
- 16- We ..... always cook chicken before we eat it.  
a) should                      b) must                      c) shouldn't                      d) mustn't
- 17- You.....finish that report tonight if you're too tired. Midday tomorrow is the deadline.  
a) need to                      b) must                      c) needn't                      d) shouldn't
- 18- You ..... always boil tap water before you drink it.  
a) shouldn't                      b) can't                      c) mustn't                      d) should
- 19- You ..... eat any food that smells bad.  
a) must                      b) mustn't                      c) ought to                      d) needn't
- 20- Rice ..... have water in order to grow.  
a) must                      b) should                      c) had better                      d) needn't
- 21- If you have touched an infected bird, you ..... wash very well.  
a) shouldn't                      b) must                      c) can't                      d) could
- 22- Children ..... taught to respect their elders.  
a) should be                      b) had better                      c) has to be                      d) must have
- 23- A: I'm putting on weight.                      B: You ..... go on a diet.  
a) ought                      b) had to                      c) needed to                      d) should
- 24- A: I've got a cold.                      B: Then you'd ..... stay in bed.  
a) need to                      b) better                      c) have to                      d) should
- 25- You ..... cross the roads without looking. It's dangerous.  
a) needn't                      b) mustn't                      c) have to                      d) don't have to
- 26- You ..... turn on the central heating. It's automatic.  
a) must                      b) mustn't                      c) have to                      d) don't have to
- 27- The exams are next week. I ..... work harder.  
a) must                      b) mustn't                      c) has to                      d) don't have to
- 28- You ..... do your homework. If you don't, you'll fail the examination.  
a) must                      b) had to                      c) had better                      d) might
- 29- We ..... leave now or we'll miss the plane.  
a) should                      b) mustn't                      c) have to                      d) don't have to
- 30- You ..... park here as there's a no "No parking" sign.  
a) have to                      b) can                      c) shouldn't                      d) mustn't
- 31- It's a ..... to get a doctor at once.  
a) necessary                      b) must                      c) should                      d) advice
- 32- You ..... park here. It says a "No Parking" area.  
a) mustn't                      b) needn't                      c) don't have to                      d) won't

- 33- We haven't got much time. We ..... hurry.  
a) needn't                      b) must                      c) don't have to                      d) has to
- 34- You ..... throw away food if you think it is bad or poisonous.  
a) mustn't                      b) ought                      c) shouldn't                      d) must
- 35- You ..... always take your shoes off at the door.  
a) should                      b) must                      c) shouldn't                      d) mustn't
- 36- You ..... take your shoes off before going into someone's house.  
a) should                      b) must                      c) shouldn't                      d) mustn't
- 37- You ..... do it now. You can do it this afternoon.  
a) mustn't                      b) had better                      c) needn't                      d) should
- 38- Vegetables ..... be washed carefully.  
a) has to                      b) have to                      c) ought                      d) might
- 39- Do you think I ..... tell the teacher what happened?  
a) have to                      b) should                      c) need                      d) ought
- 40- Drivers ..... stop their cars when the traffic lights are red.  
a) should                      b) must                      c) shouldn't                      d) mustn't
- 41- You ..... drink this. It is poison.  
a) shouldn't                      b) mustn't                      c) oughtn't                      d) needn't
- 42- You ..... take that train. There's another one in ten minutes.  
a) mustn't                      b) has to                      c) don't have to                      d) have to
- 43- You ..... clean your kitchen floor at least once a week.  
a) should                      b) must                      c) shouldn't                      d) mustn't
- 44- I ..... go to school yesterday. It was a holiday.  
a) needn't                      b) won't                      c) didn't have to                      d) shouldn't
- 45- They suggest using plastic chopping boards and .....them an extra clean.  
a) give                      b) to give                      c) giving                      d) to giving
- 46- You ..... wash your hands, so that there's no bacteria on them.  
a) ought                      b) must                      c) shouldn't                      d) mustn't
- 47- You ..... touch the metal part of the knife while you're using it.  
a) should                      b) must                      c) shouldn't                      d) mustn't
- 48- You ..... wash fruit and vegetables before you eat them.  
a) should                      b) must                      c) shouldn't                      d) mustn't
- 49- You ..... park here. It's amilitary area.  
a) must                      b) mustn't                      c) ought to                      d) shouldn't
- 50- It would be a good idea ..... a lot in your free time.  
a) read                      b) reading                      c) to read                      d) reads
- 51- I was very tired yesterday. I ..... go to bed early.  
a) was                      b) must                      c) needn't                      d) had to
- 52- You ..... smoke in hospitals. It's against the law.  
a) must                      b) mustn't                      c) ought to                      d) shouldn't
- 53- If I were you, I ..... take exercise.  
a) will                      b) should                      c) would                      d) ought to
- 54- I think it is better ..... the seatbelt when you drive.  
a) wear                      b) wearing                      c) to wear                      d) wears
- 55- You'd better ..... a first class ticket to travel by train.  
a) get                      b) getting                      c) to get                      d) gets
- 55- It isn't ..... to walk on the grass. Never do it.  
a) banned                      b) forbidden                      c) prohibited                      d) allowed
- 56- You ..... clean your house or flat as often as you can.  
a) should                      b) must                      c) shouldn't                      d) mustn't
- 57- If you touch a pet, you ..... touch anything else until you've washed your hands.  
a) should                      b) must                      c) shouldn't                      d) mustn't
- 58- Stop! You'll be punished! You ..... have parked here.

- a) shouldn't      b) didn't      c) can't      d) wouldn't
- 59- We ..... use a tissue when we sneeze to stop the bacteria spreading.  
a) should      b) must      c) need      d) mustn't
- 60- I ..... talking to him in the morning because he is usually busy after noon.  
a) 'd rather      b) must      c) 'd better      d) suggest
- 61- You ..... change your bedding at least once every two weeks.  
a) should      b) must      c) shouldn't      d) mustn't
- 62- I advise you ..... so many sweets.  
a) to eat      b) eating      c) not to eat      d) not eating
- 63- It's ..... to go to the gym more often to keep fit.  
a) advise      b) advice      c) advisable      d) advising
- 64- You ..... allowed to drive at more than 110 kph on the motorway.  
a) aren't      b) don't      c) haven't      d) isn't
- 65- It's necessary for us ..... economical.  
a) be      b) being      c) are      d) to be
- 66- I ..... to school yesterday. It was a holiday.  
a) mustn't go      b) needn't have gone      c) shouldn't go      d) didn't have to go
- 67- You ..... do your homework today because tomorrow will be a holiday.  
a) will not      b) cannot      c) don't have to      d) don't need
- 68- There is a "No Smoking " sign. We ..... smoke here.  
a) must      b) mustn't      c) should      d) shouldn't
- 69- We ..... buy souvenirs for our friends while we're here.  
a) must      b) have to      c) mustn't      d) needn't
- 70- To drive a car, one ..... get a licence first.  
a) must      b) mustn't      c) should      d) shouldn't
- 71- You .....buy a ticket before you can go into the sports stadium.  
a) need      b) must to      c) have to      d) have
- 72-We .....to buy any tomatoes. There were lots of them in the fridge.  
a) have      b) mustn't      c) needed      d) didn't need
- 73-We ..... make sure that the customers are getting value for money.  
a) must      b) mustn't      c) have to      d) needn't
- 74-My children ..... study ancient history at school next year.  
a) have to      b) must      c) needed      d) needn't
- 75-We ..... forget that tourism is very important for Egypt.  
a) must      b) mustn't      c) needn't      d) don't have to
- 76-I ..... get up very early on school days.  
a) have to      b) mustn't      c) needn't      d) has to
- 77-You ..... buy that book. I can lend you mine.  
a) mustn't      b) has to      c) had to      d) needn't
- 78-You .....speak so loudly on your phone. It's very annoying.  
a) mustn't      b) need to      c) had to      d) have to
- 79-When you arrive in another country, you ..... show your passport.  
a) must      b) has to      c) had to      d) have to
- 80-You ..... spend too much money. You'll want some for your holiday.  
a) mustn't      b) needn't      c) don't have to      d) must

## Skills

١. يجب أن نتحلى بالصبر والصمود في مواجهة مشاكلنا الاقتصادية الحالية

- 1.We must be characterized by patience and steadfastness in the face of our current economic problems.
- 2.We must characterized by patience and steadfastness in the face of our current economic problems.
- 3.We must be characterized by patience and steadfastness in the hand of our current economic problems.
- 4.We must be characterized by patience and steadfastness in the face of our current economic problem.

٢- يجب على شبابنا دفع عجلة التنمية من أجل مستقبل أفضل.

1. Our youth should pushes the acceleration of development for a better future.
- 2.Our youth should push the acceleration of development for a better future.

3. Our youth should push the acceleration for development for a better future.

4. Our youth should push the acceleration of development for a bad future

**3- لقد أصبحت السياحة العمود الفقري لتطوير الاقتصاد المصري.**

1. Tourism has become the backbone of the development of the Egyptian economy.

2. Tourism has become the backbone of the development of the Egypt economy.

3. Tourism has become the backbone of the development of the Egyptian economy.

4. Tourism has become the backbone of the development of the Egyptian economy.

**4- تهدف قوانين المرور الجديدة الى تحقيق أنسياب المرور والحد من حوادث السيارات.**

1. The new traffic law aim to achieve the flow of traffic and reduce car accidents.

2. The new traffic laws aim to achieve the flow of traffic and reduce car accidents.

3. The new traffic laws aim to achieve the flow of traffic and reduce car accidents.

4. The new traffic laws aim for achieve the flow of traffic and reduce car accidents.

**5- Teachers in Egypt suffer from low salaries compared to the great role they must play in the lives of our children**

١ - يعاني المعلمون في مصر من دنو رواتبهم ، بالمقارنة بالدور العظيم الذي يجب أن يلعبوه في حياة أطفالنا

٢ - عاني المعلمون في مصر من تدني رواتبهم ، بالمقارنة بالدور المعظم الذي يجب أن يلعبوه في حياة أبنائنا

٣ - يعاني المعلمون في مصر من تدني رواتبهم ، بالمقارنة بالدور العظيم الذي يجب أن يلعبوه في حياة أبنائنا

٤ - يعاني المعلمون في مصر من دنو رواتبهم ، بالمقارنة بالدور العظيم الذي يحبوا أن يلعبوه في حياة أطفالنا

**6- The individual's sense of belonging to this country is one of the most important things that guarantee societal peace.**

١ - ان احساس الفرد بالانتماء لهذا البلد احد اهم الاشياء التي لا تضمن السلام المجتمعي

٢ - يعتبر احساس الفرد بالانتماء لهذا البلد احد اهم الاشياء التي تضمن السلام الجماعي

٣ - احساس الفرد بالانتماء لهذا البلد احد اهم الاشياء التي لا تضمن السلام المجتمعي

٤ - يعد احساس الفرد بالانتماء لهذا البلد احد اهم الاشياء التي لا تضمن السلام الاجتماعي

**7- There are some measures that may keep you healthy for long. One of them is to brush your teeth with dental paste twice a day.**

أ- يوجد بعض المعايير التي ربما تبقيك بصحة جيدة، لفترة طويلة. أحد أهم هذه المعايير أن تغسل أسنانك بمعجون الأسنان مرتين يوميا

ب- يوجد العديد من المعايير التي ربما تبقيك بصحة جيدة، لفترة طويلة. أحد أهم هذه المعايير أن تغسل أسنانك بفرشاة الأسنان مرتين يوميا

ج- هناك بعض عدد المعايير التي ربما تبقيك بصحة جيدة، لفترة طويلة. أحد أهم هذه المعايير أن تغسل أسنانك بفرشاة الأسنان مرتين يوميا

د- هناك عدة المعايير التي ربما تحافظ على صحتك، لفترة طويلة. أحد أهم هذه المعايير أن تغسل أسنانك بفرشاة الأسنان مرتين

**8- Modern devices have no longer been a luxury but it has become a must for every house.**

ب- لم تعد الأجهزة الحديثة متعة، بل هي إضافة لكل بيت

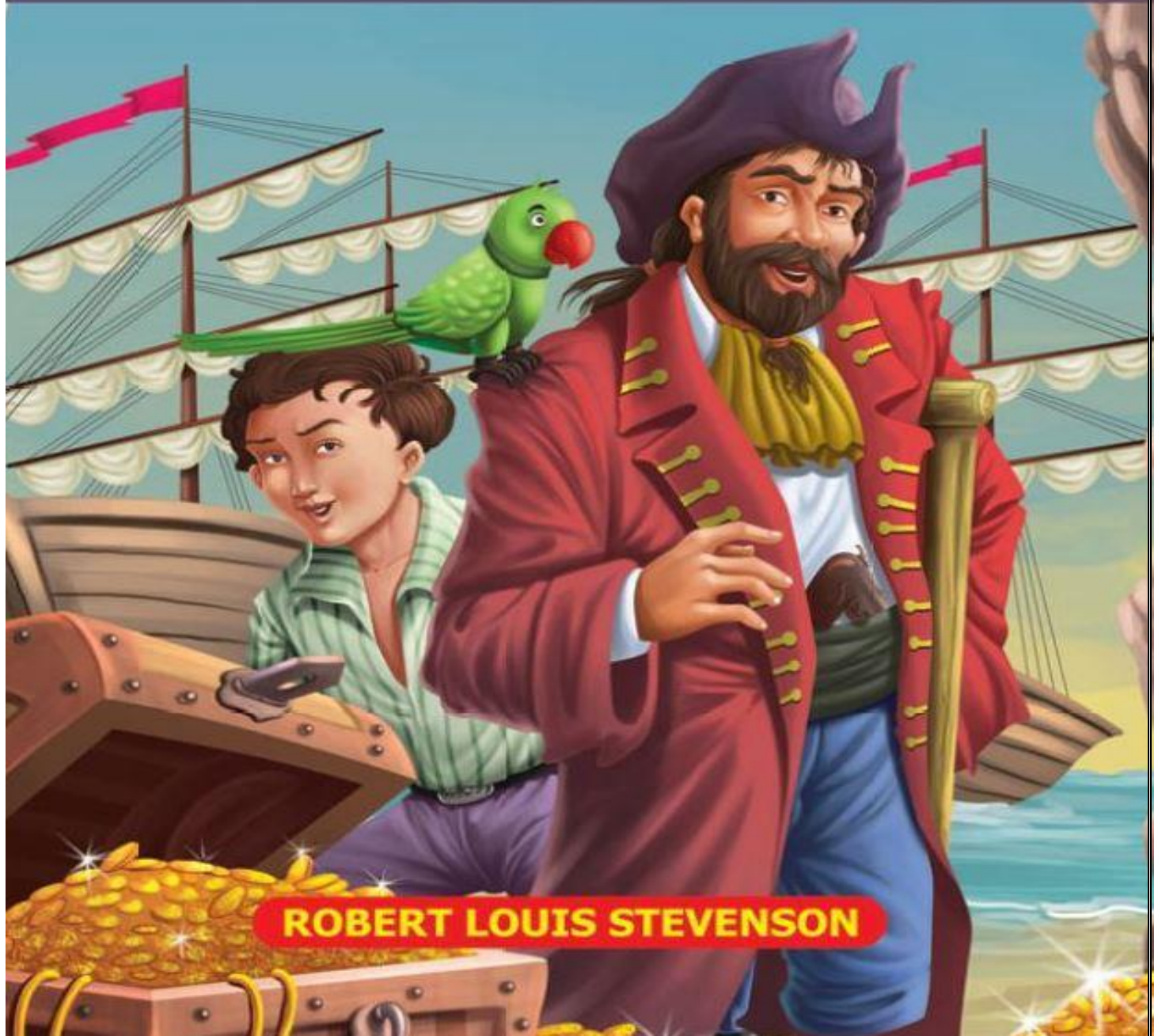
د لم تعد المعدات الحديثة ترفا، بل هي ضرورة لكل بيت

ا- لم تعد الأجهزة الحديثة ترفا، بل هي ضرورة لكل بيت.

ج- لم تعد الاجهزة التقليدية ترفا، بل هي ضرورة لكل بيت

EVERLASTING ILLUSTRATED CLASSICS

# TREASURE ISLAND



ROBERT LOUIS STEVENSON



## Chapter Seven

### Jim Hawkins:

I walked with **Ben Gun** and we soon saw the fort. "Your friends will be inside, Jim," said Ben. "It might be the pirates," I replied.

"No, look at the flag! They will be good men," he answered. "The fort was made by **Flint**. He was a clever man and he wasn't frightened of anyone, except **Silver**." "Let's go inside," I said.

"I can't go in there," Gun replied. "I don't trust anyone. I'll wait for you. Remember what I told you. I can help you. Come and find me tomorrow."

Before I could go to the fort, there was the sound of more gun fire and I had to hide so I wouldn't be hit. From the trees where I waited, I could now see the **Hispaniola**. It was also flying a flag, but it was the black pirate's flag.

When it was nearly dark, I walked round to the back of the fort and called out. The door opened, and **Dr Livesy** let me inside. I sat down and told them my story. The wind blew sand inside the fort and we found it everywhere, in our clothes, in our food and in our eyes. There was a fire to keep us warm, but the room was also full of smoke and we all coughed.

**Captain Smollett** gave us all jobs: some looked for firewood, others went to cook food, and I was asked to guard the door. He kept us all busy, and that made us all feel better. "**Captain Smollett** is a good man," said Dr. **Livesy** later that day. "And what about **Ben Gun**? Is he a good man?"

"I don't know," I answered. "I think he's a little crazy."

"Any man on an island for three years will be a bit crazy," explained the doctor.

"Did you say that he wanted some good food?" "Yes," I replied. "I've brought some cheese with me on this journey. Let's give it to **Ben Gun**!" said the doctor. That evening, the men talked about how little food we had. We hoped that the pirates would leave the island with the **Hispaniola**. The doctor said that they would become ill if they slept outside on the island for long. And if the pirates left, we could wait until help arrived. I slept very well that night. The next morning, a voice woke me up. I heard someone say, "Some pirates are coming to the fort with a white flag. Look, it's **Silver**! He wants a truce!" I got up and looked from the fort. It was a cold morning, and although it was sunny, there was a low mist. We could only see the head of **Silver** and another pirate. "Stay in the fort," said **Captain Smollett**. "I'm sure that this is a trick." Then he called out to **Silver**, "Tell us what you want." "I want a truce," said **Silver**. **Captain Smollett** quietly told us to move to different corners of the fort and to watch **Silver** carefully. Then he called to **Silver**, "What do you want us to do?" "Come to my ship and we can talk about how to get home," said **Silver**. "Your ship? I didn't know you had a ship here," replied **Captain Smollett**.

"Well, the crew chose me to be their captain after you left the ship," said **Silver**. "If you have something to say, you can come into the fort and say it," said **Captain Smollett**. The other pirate tried to stop **Silver**, but he laughed and walked quickly towards the fort. He climbed over one of the fences and walked slowly up the hill. Soon he was standing in front of **Captain Smollett**, who was waiting for him outside the door to the fort. "Can't I come inside?" asked **Silver**. "It's a cold morning." "If you were an honest man, you could come inside," said **Captain**



**Smollett.** "But are you my ship's cook, who I looked after, or Captain **Silver**, a pirate?" "OK, we can stay here," said **Silver**, sitting down on the sand. "You've got a nice place here. Look, there's Jim! Good morning." "If you have anything to say, say it now," said **Captain Smollett**. "Captain, we want the treasure, and we're going to find it. However, I think you all want to leave the island safely. You have the map, don't you?" asked **Silver**. "Perhaps," said **Captain Smollett**. "I know you have it," said **Silver**. "We don't want to hurt you. Give us the map and then we will take you home on the ship. We'll take you somewhere safe. Or, if you prefer, we'll leave you some supplies and you can stay on the island. Then we can ask another ship to come and take you home. It's a kind offer, and I hope you all want to take it." He said this last part loudly, so that we could all hear in the fort. "Is that all you can offer?" said **Captain Smollett**. "It is, and if you don't accept my offer, all you will hear from me is the sound of guns!" "Now you can listen to me," replied **Captain Smollett**. "If you come up to the fort, one by one, without any guns, I'll put you all in chains and take you back to England for trial.

If you don't, you'll have problems. You can't find the treasure. You don't have enough men to sail the ship, and you can't fight us here in the fort."

**Silver** looked very angry. "This will not end well for any of you," he said, and then he walked slowly back down the hill. **Captain Smollett** came back into the fort and said to us, "He'll be back in an hour to attack us. There are more of them than us, but we have the advantage inside the fort, and I am sure that we can win."

### Critical thinking questions with answers

1. Why do you think the fort was very important for Captain Smollett and his men?

لماذا تعتقد أن الحصن كان مهمًا جدًا للكابتن سموليت ورجاله؟

The fort gave Captain Smollett and his men protection from the pirates. It was where they had a fire for warmth and food to eat.

لقد وفر الحصن للكابتن سموليت ورجاله الحماية من القراصنة. كان المكان الذي أشعلوا فيه نارا للتدفئة وحصلوا فيه على الطعام.

2. Why do you think Captain Smollett put up a flag earlier on the fort?

لماذا تعتقد أن الكابتن سموليت رفع علما في وقت سابق على الحصن؟

It showed the pirates that they had the fort.

لقد أظهر ذلك للقراصنة أنهم يسيطرون على الحصن.

3. Why do you think Ben Gun refused to go inside the fort?

لماذا تعتقد أن بن جن رفض الدخول إلى الحصن؟

He did not know if he could trust the people inside it.

لم يكن يعرف ما إذا كان بإمكانه الوثوق بالأشخاص بداخله.

4. Why do you think Ben Gun would be crazy?

لماذا تعتقد أن بن جن قد يكون مجنوناً؟

As he stayed alone for many years, without talking to anyone.

لأنه ظل وحيداً لسنوات عديدة، دون التحدث مع أي شخص.

5. How do you think Jim knew that the pirates seized the ship?

كيف تعتقد أن جيم عرف أن القراصنة استولوا على السفينة؟

The pirates raised their flag on the ship.

رفع القراصنة علمهم على السفينة.

6. Why do you think Jim and the men wished that the pirates would leave with the ship?

لماذا تعتقد أن جيم والرجال تمنوا أن يغادر القراصنة مع السفينة؟

They thought that if they left with the ship, they could wait for help to arrive.

اعتقدوا أنه إذا غادروا مع السفينة، فيمكنهم انتظار وصول المساعدة.

7. " Smollett killed two birds with one stone when he gave everyone in the fort a job to do." Explain

The expression means to do two things at the same time. In this situation, he kept everyone busy to make them feel better, and he also got some jobs done.

يعني التعبير القيام بأمرين في نفس الوقت. في هذه الحالة، أبقى الجميع مشغولين لجعلهم يشعرون بتحسن، وأنجز أيضًا بعض المهام.

8. Why do you think Silver arrived at the fort with a white flag?

لماذا تعتقد أن سيلفر جاء للحصن بعلم أبيض؟

It meant he wanted a truce or negotiation. Silver wanted to talk to Smollett.

كان ذلك يعني أنه يريد هدنة أو مفاوضات. أراد سيلفر التحدث مع سموليت

9. Silver's truce had two offers and one threat. What were they? كان لهدنة سيلفر عرضان وتهديد واحد. ما هم؟  
He said he would take them home or somewhere safe if they gave him the map, or they could stay on the island and wait for help. His threat was 'the sound of guns'. Silver would fight them.

قال إنه سيأخذهم إلى الوطن أو إلى مكان آمن إذا أعطوه الخريطة، أو يمكنهم البقاء في الجزيرة وانتظار المساعدة. كان تهديده هو "صوت البنادق". سيقاتلهم سيلفر.

10. Why do you think Silver wanted a truce?

To persuade Captain Smollett to give him the map.

لماذا تعتقد أن سيلفر أراد هدنة؟

لإقناع الكابتن سموليت بإعطائه الخريطة.

11. Why do you think Captain Smollett refused Silver's offer? لماذا تعتقد أن سموليت رفض عرض سيلفر؟

(a) Silver was cunning and dishonest. (b) Silver didn't have enough men to attack them. (c) the fort was strong. (أ) كان سيلفر مكرراً وغير أمين. (ب) لم يكن لدى سيلفر عدد كافٍ من الرجال لمهاجمتهم. (ج) كان الحصن قوياً.

12. How do you think Captain Smollett threatened Silver?

كيف تعتقد أن الكابتن سموليت هدد سيلفر؟

He would take them for the trail in England.

سيأخذهم للمحاكمة في إنجلترا.

### For El Azhar

1- Why did Silver arrive at the fort with a white flag?

2- Why didn't Captain Smollett allow Silver to enter the fort?

3- What did Silver want the men in the fort to do?

4- Why did Captain Smollett refuse Silver's offer to leave them with some supplies?

5- How did Silver threaten Captain Smollett ?

6. Why didn't Captain Smollett allow Silver to enter the fort?

### Test unit seven

#### Choose the two correct answers : Vocabulary

1- Don't complete the pointless argument. The opposites of "argument" are .....

a) disagreement b) agreement c) development d) disappointment e) harmony

2. Addiction is a serious problem. The antonym of "serious" is.....

a) hazardous b) safe c) dangerous d) secure e) empty

#### 2) Choose the correct answer

1. You ..... show your passport at the passport.

a- shouldn't b- don't need to c- must d- haven't

2. You ..... spend too much money. You won't have any left for your holiday.

a- mustn't b- should c- have to d- don't need to

3. We ..... eat fruit and vegetables. They are good for our health

a- needn't b- have got c- don't have to d- should

4. You ..... take that book back to the library yet. You can keep it for another week.

a- must b- don't have to c- mustn't d- need to

5. You ..... take an umbrella if you are going to Egypt. It doesn't often rain there.

a- have to b- should c- don't need to d- must

6. My friend sent me an e-mail this morning. I ..... reply soon or he'll start to worry.

a- don't have to b- mustn't c- don't need to d- need to

7. You ..... see a doctor. You look very ill.

a- mustn't b- don't have to c- must d- can't

8- The government has to enforce the ..... law due to the violent demonstration.

a- deficiency b- emergency c- efficiency d- proficiency

9- Cleanliness includes both ..... and sanitation.

a- hygienic b- sanitary c) salutation d- hygiene

10- The police hurried to the stadium to ..... It as there is a bomb under a seat.

a- celebrate b- educate c- evacuate d- locate

11- The smoke of the fire was too thick for the victims to .....

a- breathe b- breath c- disease d- release

12- Please, I want you to ..... these sandwiches to take them home.

a- eat b- stew c- wrap d- fold

- 13- The screen of the computer isn't clear. It has much ----- on it.  
 a) rust                      b) dust                      c) mast                      d- cast
- 14- The boys could help the injured man because they had learnt about .....  
 a- danger                      b- hygiene                      c- raid                      d- first aid
- 15- When she takes an injection her arm will swell up. She suffers from-----  
 a- allergy                      b- allergic                      c- garlic                      d- gallery
- 16- The high Dam leads to depriving the ----- from the silt .  
 a- salt                      b- soil                      c- emergency                      d- dust

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

The World Cup is one of the biggest sporting events in the world. This great soccer championship features players from thirty-two nations. Each nation wants to win the cup by becoming the number one soccer team. The World Cup is a worldwide contest that takes place only once every four years. However, it holds the attention of much of the planet when the games begin. The World Cup was created in 1928, and the first World Cup games were held in Uruguay in 1930. It was an all-male contest at the time. The first women's World Cup was held in China in 1991. Soccer is not quite as popular in the United States as basketball, or baseball. However, it still has millions of followers. People all over the world often get up in the middle of the night or skip work to watch their nation's team compete. More than five billion people watch the final match on television. That is most of the people living on the planet. During the contests leading up to the final game, people in the winning nations often hold street parties to celebrate their teams' victories. Some countries seem to be the best in the game for a period of time. When Pele played for Brazil in 1970, his team won the World Cup. Brazil's team is considered one of the greatest. Pele is regarded as the best soccer player by many fans. Brazil has won a total of five World Cups, far more than any other nation. Another matchless player was Maradona who was regarded as one of the greatest ever footballers to have played the game, and was awarded FIFA Best Player of the 20th Century. Maradona, became a global icon after leading Argentina to the 1986 World Cup but he was not a clean idol like Pele, he was known for drug addiction and he was arrested in Argentina for cocaine possession.

**17- From the context of the passage, which is the best antonym for "victories"?**

- a) wins                      b) happiness                      c) results                      d) defeats

**18- Who is Pele?** ( cocaine addict -a Brazilian team -an average soccer player -one of the greatest soccer players)

**19- When was the first women's World Cup?** ( 1928- 1930-1991-1997 )

**20- In America, basketball and baseball are ..... soccer.**

- a) more popular than                      b) less popular than                      c) as popular as                      d) more dangerous than

**21- People all over the world admired Maradona despite .....**

- a) his bad behavior                      b) leading his team to the World Cup                      c) his matchless talent                      d) scoring so many goals

**22- The FIFA Best Player award goes to players who .....**

- a) addict cocaine                      b) the greatest players in the game                      c) take part in the World Cup                      d) deal in drugs

**23- People skipping work to watch their nation's team compete are ..... the game.**

- a) crazy about                      b) hardly interested in                      c) have no affection for                      d) might be arrested

**24- The first women's World Cup was held in ..... . ( Africa -Uruguay -Asia - South America)**

**Choose the best translation:**

**1- التمريض مهنة إنسانية نبيلة راقية لا تساويها إلا مهنة التعليم**

- a) Nursing is a noble, refined humanistic profession, not equalled by thing but education.  
 b) Nursery is a noble, refined humanistic work, not equalled by anything but education.  
 c) Nursery is a noble, refined humanistic profession, not equalled by anything but education.  
 d) Nursing is a noble, refined human job, not equals by anything except education

**2- Job opportunities have to be created for youth to limit the problem of unemployment.**

٢ - يجب توفير فرص وظائف للشباب للحد من مشكلة البطالة

٤ - يجب خلق وظائف للشباب للحد من مشكلة البطالة

١ - يجب خلق فرص عمل للشباب للحد من مشكلة البطالة

٣ - يجب البحث عن فرص عمل للشباب للحد من مشكلة البطالة

**The Novel**

- Why do you think Ben Gun would be crazy?
- How do you think Jim knew that the pirates seized the ship?
- " Smollett killed two birds with one stone when he gave everyone in the fort a job to do." Explain

**4) Write an essay of 180 words about one of the following topics:**

- The importance of having a family

# Unit Eight

## Vocabulary

# Robots

اللاتسان الآلي

By: Mr El Sebael Attaya

|                             |             |                      |               |                      |                    |
|-----------------------------|-------------|----------------------|---------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| <b>invention</b>            | اختراع      | <b>get around</b>    | يتجول         | <b>device</b>        | جهاز               |
| <b>comment</b>              | تعليق       | <b>go out</b>        | يخرج          | <b>transport</b>     | النقل              |
| <b>below</b>                | أسفل        | <b>robot</b>         | إنسان آلي     | <b>chart</b>         | خريطة              |
| <b>click</b>                | نقرة        | <b>control</b>       | يتحكم         | <b>lead to</b>       | يؤدي إلى           |
| <b>button</b>               | زر          | <b>together</b>      | معاً          | <b>stress</b>        | توتر               |
| <b>global</b>               | عالمي       | <b>boil</b>          | يغلي          | <b>positive</b>      | إيجابي             |
| <b>position</b>             | موقع        | <b>steam</b>         | بخار          | <b>negative</b>      | سلبي               |
| <b>system</b>               | نظام        | <b>possible</b>      | ممکن          | <b>philosopher</b>   | فيلسوف             |
| <b>navigation</b>           | ملاحة       | <b>probable</b>      | محتمل         | <b>printing</b>      | طباعة              |
| <b>familiar</b>             | مألوف       | <b>unlikely</b>      | غير محتمل     | <b>press</b>         | يضغط               |
| <b>exactly</b>              | بالضبط      | <b>grade</b>         | درجة          | <b>memory</b>        | ذاكرة              |
| <b>map</b>                  | خريطة       | <b>consequence</b>   | نتيجة         | <b>conclusion</b>    | ختم                |
| <b>vehicle</b>              | مركبة       | <b>result</b>        | نتيجة         | <b>clearly</b>       | بوضوح              |
| <b>benefit</b>              | فائدة       | <b>column</b>        | عمود          | <b>whether</b>       | إذا                |
| <b>hybrid car</b>           | سيارة       | <b>translation</b>   | ترجمة         | <b>documentary</b>   | وثائقي             |
| <b>electric</b>             | كهربائي     | <b>app</b>           | تطبيق         | <b>admit</b>         | يعترف              |
| <b>distance</b>             | مسافة       | <b>quiz</b>          | لغز           | <b>extreme</b>       | متطرف              |
| <b>reason</b>               | سبب         | <b>chat</b>          | دردشة         | <b>share</b>         | يشارك              |
| <b>find out</b>             | يكتشف       | <b>feedback</b>      | مردود         | <b>even if</b>       | حتى لو             |
| <b>luxury</b>               | ترف         | <b>hyberdisation</b> | تهجين         | <b>brainstorm</b>    | بفكر-عصف ذهني      |
| <b>nearly</b>               | تقريباً     | <b>specific</b>      | محدد          | <b>anchor</b>        | مرساة              |
| <b>argue</b>                | يجادل       | <b>choice</b>        | اختيار        | <b>paddle</b>        | مجداف              |
| <b>details</b>              | تفاصيل      | <b>example</b>       | مثال          | <b>rope</b>          | حبل                |
| <b>collect</b>              | يجمع        | <b>quietly</b>       | بهدوء         | <b>steer</b>         | يوجه               |
| <b>think about</b>          | يفكر في     | <b>weakly</b>        | بضعف          | <b>thick</b>         | كثيف               |
| <b>topic</b>                | موضوع       | <b>noise</b>         | ضوضاء         | <b>thickness</b>     | كثافة - سمك        |
| <b>essay</b>                | مقال        | <b>cry</b>           | صرخة          | <b>imagine</b>       | يتخيل              |
| <b>navigate</b>             | يبحر / يحدد | <b>argue</b>         | يجادل         | <b>printing</b>      | الصحافة            |
| <b>technological device</b> | جهاز تقني   | <b>guess</b>         | يخمن          | <b>engine</b>        | محرك - موتور       |
| <b>electricity</b>          | كهرباء      | <b>petrol</b>        | بنزين         | <b>communication</b> | اتصال / تواصل      |
| <b>mean</b>                 | يقصد - يعني | <b>cost</b>          | يُكلف / تكلفة | <b>GPS</b>           | نظام تحديد الأماكن |

## Definitions

|                  |                                                                                      |                           |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>click</b>     | The act of pressing the button on a computer mouse or touch pad.                     | <b>يضغط</b>               |
| <b>familiar</b>  | Well known to you ; often seen or heard and therefore easy to recognize              | <b>مألوف</b>              |
| <b>invention</b> | A thing or an idea that has been invented // the act of inventing something.         | <b>اختراع</b>             |
| <b>navigate</b>  | To find the position of your ship , plane , car etc and the direction you need to go | <b>يبحر</b>               |
| <b>vehicle</b>   | A thing that's used for transporting people or goods ( cars- lorries – trucks etc )  | <b>مركبة</b>              |
| <b>GPS</b>       | ( Global Positioning System) used to show the position of a person on the earth      | <b>نظام تحديد الأماكن</b> |

|                         |                                                                            |                    |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>hybrid vehicle</b>   | A vehicle that uses two different types of power ( petrol and electricity) | <b>مركبة هجين</b>  |
| <b>benefit</b>          | An advantage that something gives you .( A helpful and useful effect )     | <b>فائده</b>       |
| <b>the internet</b>     | An international computer network connecting other networks .              |                    |
| <b>find out</b>         | To( discover ) get information about something by asking , reading etc     | <b>يكتشف</b>       |
| <b>get around</b>       | To move from place to place or from person to person                       | <b>يتجول</b>       |
| <b>go out</b>           | To leave your house to go to a social event.                               | <b>يخرج</b>        |
| <b>translation</b>      | The process of changing something that's written into another language     | <b>ترجمه</b>       |
| <b>app(application)</b> | A programme designed to do a particular job ; a piece of software          | <b>تطبيق</b>       |
| <b>quiz</b>             | A competition or game in which people try to answer questions              | <b>امتحان قصير</b> |
| <b>chat</b>             | To talk in a friendly formal way to somebody .                             | <b>يتحدث</b>       |
| <b>feedback</b>         | Advice , criticism or information about how good or useful something is    | <b>استرجاع</b>     |
| <b>hybrid</b>           | An animal or plant that has parents of different species or varieties .    | <b>هجين</b>        |

## Expressions

|                               |                           |                                       |                       |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>technological device</b>   | جهاز تكنولوجي             | <b>favourable opinion</b>             | راي مؤيد              |
| <b>mutual benefit</b>         | فائدة مزدوجة              | <b>be controlled by</b>               | يتم التحكم فيه بواسطة |
| <b>do a quiz</b>              | يحل لغز                   | <b>write down</b>                     | يدون / يسجل بالكتابة  |
| <b>concentrate on</b>         | يركز على                  | <b>be programmed to</b>               | مبرمج على             |
| <b>put ... together</b>       | يضع ... معاً              | <b>be interested in</b>               | مهتم بـ               |
| <b>have an effect on</b>      | له تأثير على              | <b>riding on a bicycle</b>            | يركب على دراجة        |
| <b>careful about</b>          | حريص بشأن                 | <b>turn on / off</b>                  | يفتح / يقفل           |
| <b>go long distances</b>      | يسافر لمسافات طويلة       | <b>in conclusion</b>                  | ونتيجة لذلك           |
| <b>interested in - to</b>     | مهتم بـ                   | <b>in the 20<sup>th</sup> century</b> | في القرن العشرين      |
| <b>give opinion about</b>     | يعبر عن رأيه في           | <b>on the one hand</b>                | من ناحية              |
| <b>worried about</b>          | قلق بشأن                  | <b>on the other hand</b>              | من الناحية الأخرى     |
| <b>familiar with</b>          | مألوف لدى                 | <b>think of</b>                       | يراعي شعور - يفكر في  |
| <b>communicate with</b>       | يتواصل مع                 | <b>collect (share) information</b>    | يجمع (يشارك) معلومات  |
| <b>enjoy free time</b>        | يستمتع بوقت الفراغ        | <b>I can't agree more</b>             | أنا موافق معك تماماً  |
| <b>do well / badly</b>        | يؤدي أداءاً حسناً / سيئاً | <b>take years</b>                     | يستغرق سنوات          |
| <b>discuss consequences</b>   | يناقش النتائج             | <b>save money</b>                     | يوفر مال              |
| <b>cycle around</b>           | يتجول بالدراجة            | <b>make friends with</b>              | يتصادق مع             |
| <b>press a button</b>         | يضغط زر                   | <b>leave a comment</b>                | يترك تعليق            |
| <b>offer advantages</b>       | يقدم مميزات               | <b>go / get online</b>                | يدخل على النت         |
| <b>do a lot more things</b>   | يفعل أشياء أكثر بكثير     | <b>cause problems</b>                 | يسبب مشاكل            |
| <b>get (find) answers</b>     | يحصل على الاجابات         | <b>lead to problems</b>               | يؤدي الى مشاكل        |
| <b>is able to</b>             | قادر علي                  | <b>positive effect</b>                | تأثير ايجابي          |
| <b>free time / spare time</b> | وقت فراغ                  | <b>merits and demerits</b>            | مزايا وعيوب           |
| <b>leisure industry</b>       | صناعة وقت الفراغ          | <b>stressful situation</b>            | موقف مرهق             |
| <b>satellite navigation</b>   | ملاحة بالقمر الصناعي      | <b>negative effect</b>                | تأثير سلبي            |
| <b>make comments</b>          | يعلق                      | <b>make sure</b>                      | يتأكد                 |



## Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word       | Synonym        | Antonym                       |
|------------|----------------|-------------------------------|
| benefit    | فائده          | loss / damage                 |
| collect    | يجمع           | scatter / divide / distribute |
| navigate   | يبحر           | mislead                       |
| useful     | مفيد           | useless / vain / worthless    |
| positive   | ايجابي         | negative / useless            |
| advantages | مميزات         | demerits / downsides / cons   |
| extreme    | شديد           | moderate / mild / average     |
| stressful  | مجهد           | relaxing / easy / calm        |
| online     | متصل بالانترنت | offline                       |

## Language Notes

1 - **invent** يخترع // **invention** اختراع // **inventor** مخترع // **innovate** يبتكر // **innovation** ابتكار

#####

2 - **Have + p.p** مفعول

I had my car repaired

Ali had the windows washed

( شخص آخر غير الفاعل قام بالفعل )

الميكانيكي هو من قام بتصليح العربية

شخص آخر غير علي غسل الشبابتك

#####

3 - **Do without** يستغني عن ( **dispense with** ) - **We can't dispense with water .**

#####

4 - **Get to** يصل إلى / **arrive at - in** مكان / **reach +** ( **مكان أفقي أو رأسي و شيء معنوي** )

- **Get to Cairo / arrive in Cairo / reach Cairo / the top / the bottom / my goal / a good idea**

#####

5 - **Communicate** ( **with** مع شخص / **in** لغة / **to** ينقل / **by e-mail** )

- **I communicate my ideas to them .**

#####

6 - **How** صفة أو ظرف +

- **How useful** is technology when you are learning something?

- **How well or badly did you do** your homework ? - **How beautiful** the picture is !

8- **What +** اسم أو اسم موصوف ( **What a beautiful picture it is !** ) لاحظ عدم تقديم الفعل علي الفاعل في التعجب

#####

7- **interested in / keen on / fond of / excited about + verb + ing**

#####

8 - **In the end**, ..... - **In the end**, he found his kidnapped son.

- **At the end of +** مفعول .... - **At the end of the film**, he found his son.

- **By the end of +** مفعول .... - **By the end of the day**, they had painted the flat.

#####

9 - **Discovering that he was a thief**, I told the police at once.

= **When I discovered that** ..... **v-ing** يمكن ربط جملتين باستخدام

#####

10 - **prefer + v-ing ...** يفضل بصفة عامة - **I prefer reading detective stories.**

- **prefer + to + inf. ...** يفضل لمرة واحدة - **I prefer to read a comic story now.**

- **prefer + v-ing to + v-ing** - **I prefer reading books to playing football.**

#####

11- **Wherever** أينما - **Watch him wherever he goes.**

- **Whenever** في أي وقت / حيثما - **Call me whenever you need help.**

**Whoever** أي شخص / مهما يكن - **Say I'm busy whoever ask to meet me.**

**Whatever** أي شيء / أيأ كان - **I'll eat whatever you cook.**

**Whichever** أي شيء / أيهما - **I'll buy one of the two; whichever you choose.**



12- **The + صفة مقارنة ..... the + صفة مقارنة ..... .** كلما ..... كلما .....

- The **earlier** you start , the **better**.

The **more** you study , the **fewer** mistakes will you make.

#####

13- **much / a lot / far + صفة مقارنة ..... بكثير** - There will be a lot less petrol.

- **a little / a bit / slightly + صفة مقارنة ... بقليل** - He's a little taller than me.

#####

14- **hundred thousand million billion** - لا تُجمع طالما سبقها رقم مفرد أو جمع

- Two thousand years ago, there was a big flood in this area.

- Thousands of people refused the new tax. - ولكن لاحظ الجمع بدون اسم قبلها:

#####

15- **everyday (adj) يومي (صفة) + اسم** **every day (adv) (ظرف) كل يوم**

The internet has become part of **everyday life**. / I **walk** to school **every day**

#####

16- **even if + تناقض** - I'll come with you even if I'm busy.

#####

17- **help + inf. = help to + inf. ....**

- **help ..... with + اسم (نشاط)**

- **help ..... in + اسم (مجال)**

- Help me (to) carry this box.

- I'll help you with the washing up.

- This helps in tourism industry.

#####

18- **thanks for ...** شكراً على

- **thanks to. ...** بفضل / بسبب

- Thanks for your help. You're very kind.

- Thanks to technology, our life is better.

#####

19- **other + اسم جمع** - **others (بدون اسم (اخرين)** // - **another + زيادة (اسم مفرد) (اضافى - زيادة)**

- Some people like English. **Other people** don't like it.

- I like this cake, **give me another one**.

- Some people like English. **Others don't like it**.

#####

20- **invent : يخترع شيء ليس**

- Graham Bell invented the telephone.

**explore : يستكشف مكان ويعرف شيء عنه**

- They went on an expedition **to explore** the river Nile

**discover (يكتشف) شيء كان موجوداً من قبل ولكن غير معروف** - The planet Pluto **was discovered** in 1930

- I **found out** I had made a mistake. معلومة حقيقة - يكتشف

#####

21- **realize يدرك أو يفهم**

**recognize (يتعرف على شكل أو هيئة (مكان أو شخص)**

- He **realized** that his wallet was stolen.

- When I saw my friend, I couldn't **recognize him**.

#####

26- **One of the students is absent .**

يأتي بعد { **one of** } اسم جمع وفعل مفرد

#####

27- **lonely** وحيد

**alone** بمفرده

**only** فقط

- He is sad as he **feels lonely**.

- No one went with her to school. **She went alone**.

- He has **only a little money**.

#####

28- **hard (adj.)**

جاد - صعب - صلب

**hard (adv.)**

بجد - بغزارة

**hardly: (adv.) almost no**

- His work **was hard**. - The exam **was hard**.

- It was **raining hard**. - We must **study hard**.

بصعوبة / بشق النفس / بالكاد (تدل على النفي)

**any** ويمكن أن يليها **can / could** تأتي قبل الفعل الأساسي و غالباً يسبقها

- I **could hardly hear** her at the back. - I've **hardly done** any school work this weekend.

#####

29- **Take place = happen = occur** ( يحدث )

- Take part in = share in = participate in = contribute to

( يشارك في - يساهم في )

**LISTENING TEXT**

Ahmed: Well, **the reason** that we have the internet is so that people in different countries can talk to each other very easily and **get answers** to their questions very quickly. Although we need this fast and easy **communication**, it can **lead to problems** if people spend too much time talking online and don't work or study enough. I wouldn't say that the internet has caused a lot of problems, but I think it has caused some.

Mustafa: The problem with the internet is that it makes people feel like they aren't good enough. If you go online, you see all these photos of beautiful people on **luxury** holidays and you think 'Why isn't my life like that?' This makes some people really unhappy. Perhaps we should all **concentrate on** our own lives and our own friends and not use the internet anymore.

-----

Amal: **Technology** is so useful when you're learning something, Hana! You can find the information you need really quickly. If you don't understand a word when you're reading **a text**, you can find the **translation** for it.

Hana: **You're right**, Amal, but does that really help you to learn? I think that if you learn something, you remember it and you can use it when you're talking or writing. Technology can't help you remember things or write texts.

Amal: Well, **not exactly**, but if you use a **language** app, for example, you can do **quizzes** about new words to help you remember them. And there are apps that give you **feedback** on your writing so you can do it better next time.

Hana: I understand what you're saying. That's just not the way I learn. I prefer using a pen and paper and **making notes** in my notebook. I don't need a **smartphone**.

Amal: **That's OK**. Everyone's different. **For me**, the best thing about using technology to learn is that you can **chat** to people from all over the world online. That's really nice when you're doing your homework on your own. If you have questions, they'll help you.

**READING TEXT****What is the best invention that we have today and why is it so great?**

The internet is the best **invention** that we have today. You can find information about anything you're **interested** in. It's really useful if you need to **find out** something for a school **project**, for example. I'd never be able to do my homework **without** it! The internet also **makes** life easier in your **free time**. You can buy anything you want **online with a click of a button**. You can also **communicate** with your friends easily, **even if** they live **abroad**.

**GPS (Global Positioning System)** is the best invention. GPS helps you to **navigate** your journey from one place to another. You can use it when you visit a town that you aren't **familiar with**. In the past, people needed **maps to get around**, but GPS is more useful because it just tells you what to do. If you don't know how to **get somewhere**, the **technology** will tell you **exactly** where to go.

Most cars, buses and other vehicles need petrol, but **petrol** is becoming more expensive. What would we do if we didn't have petrol? **Fortunately**, we now have **hybrid vehicles**. Hybrid vehicles use both petrol and **electricity** to drive the engine. For this reason, the vehicle uses a lot less petrol. There are also cars that are only electric. At the moment, they cannot go **long distances**, although they are useful to travel short distances, like to school or to the shops.

I have chosen the **robot** as the best invention. A robot is a **machine** that is **controlled by** a computer. Robots can do some of the things that people can do, like cleaning or **putting parts together** in a car factory. We have had robots for a long time, but today robots can **do a lot more things** than robots could do in the past. In my opinion, the robot is the best

invention because it **makes people's lives easier** and it helps companies to **save money** when they make things like cars.

- I like **technology** a lot and I use it **every day**. It helps me find information for my school work and I can buy things easily online. But technology isn't always a good thing. It can **lead to** a lot of **stress** and it can **stop** people enjoying their free time.
- I don't know what I would do without technology! It makes life easier and you can do things so much faster. And how would we travel without technology? You can travel from Cairo to London in **just** five hours in a plane!

### Work-book Texts

#### Is technology always a good thing?

This question has been asked for many years but has anyone found an answer? On the one hand, there are always **dangers** with new technology. More than two thousand years ago, a **Greek philosopher** called Socrates was worried that writing things down would stop students using their **memories**. **In the 16th century**, following the invention of the **printing press**, a **Swiss philosopher** called Conrad Gessner thought that books would give people too much information. And in the 20th century, many people thought that the radio would make it difficult for students to think about their studies. **On the other hand**, technology usually offers some **advantages**. Books and writing are seen as **positive** things today and most people think that their advantages are more important than any **disadvantages**. **In conclusion**, perhaps it takes many years before we can see **clearly** whether new technology is good or bad.

Hala: Hi Randa. Did you watch **the documentary on technology** last night? I **must** say that it was really surprising!

Randa: No, I didn't but my brother told me about it this morning. Now he's **worried that** his phone is collecting information about him.

Hala: Yes, I understand why he thinks that. The **documentary** said internet companies are collecting information about us. For example, they know where we go because they can find that information is in our GPS.

Randa: I don't use GPS, so that's OK. But can you **imagine** life without the internet?

Hala: No, I guess not. On the one hand, it's very useful for many things. But on the other hand, we should be **careful about** what we do with our personal details and who we give them to.

Randa: Yes. I have to **admit** that's true. I never share my personal information online. And now my brother won't **even turn on** his phone.

Hala: That seems extreme. I think we should be fine if we are careful. I would **argue** that we need to think **carefully about the information we share**.

### Video Script

Will people need to **learn foreign languages** in the future? Or will technology speak them for us? Some people think that if **apps and translation software** continue to improve over the next ten to twenty years, language lessons will become **a thing of the past**. But can an app or a piece of software really communicate like a person can? They can **definitely** translate words, or even whole sentences, from one language to another. But they can't smile at the person you're talking to and show them that you really **mean** what you're saying. When you speak in a foreign language, you speak to another **human being** and human beings **find it difficult to** become friends with smartphones or computers – we **are programmed to prefer** other human beings. That's why we can **feel sure that learning languages** still has a future.

Exercises on unit : 8 (Voc.)**1 Choose two correct answers out of the five options given:**

1. I found that the boat was difficult to steer. The synonyms of **steer** are..... and .....  
a) learn                      b) direct                      c) lose                      d) control                      e) mislead
2. The voice on the phone sounded familiar. The antonyms of **familiar** are ..... and .....  
a) unknown                      b) clear                      c) beloved                      d) strong                      e) strange
3. The bully admitted attacking the old man. The synonym of the word "**admitted**" is.....  
a) denied                      b) confessed                      c) disagreed                      d) argued                      e) acknowledge
4. I was worried when my father fell ill. The antonym of the word "**worried**" is.....  
a) anxious                      b) astonishing                      c) cautious                      d) relaxed                      e) calm
5. The advantages of practicing sports are a lot. The synonym of the word "**advantage**" is.....  
a) merit                      b) demerit                      c) pros                      d) cons                      e) disadvantage

**1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. I like reading ( inline - online - outline - offline ) posts about the advantages of new technology on different websites.
2. The journalists asked the minister to ( cement- commit- comment-shae) the cause of the accident, but he effused.
3. Nowadays, people prefer to buy (solar- lunar- hybrid-hydro) cars to use less petrol and keep the environment.
4. We should teach criminals the ( sequences - consequences - squads - squires ) of their bad deeds. They should regret doing them.
5. People have different views ( related - relating - relation - relationship ) to technology.
6. The internet is the most useful ( discovery-invention-exploration-invitation ) .
7. Hybrid vehicles use ( either - neither - each - both ) petrol and electricity to drive the engine.
8. We can find information about anything you're ( interested - fond - excited -interesting ) in on the internet.
9. We can know or buy anything we like online with a ( pressure- tape- click-hit) on a button.
10. You are wasteful ! What is the (demerits- benefit-loss-uses) of having such an expensive car?
11. To operate this machine just press this ( desk - button - parton - bitty ).
12. We can also ( contact - communicate - connect - touch ) with your friends easily through the internet .
13. GPS stands for Global ( Positioning - Positioned - Positional - positions ) System.
14. There are different ( types - modals -species- inventions) of hybrid cars .
15. What qualities should you have to ( make - be - do - invent ) a good inventor?
16. GPS helps you to ( navigate - investigate - magistrate - state ) your journey from one place to another.
17. You can go from place to ( other - another - others - either ) places easily by using GPS.
18. When he moved to his new neighborhood , he wasn't ( famous - known - familiar - shown ) with this area.
19. Some tourists use maps in Cairo to get ( in - round - around - random ).
20. GPS can find the place you want to get to and then (irrigate-delegate-navigate-locate) your journey to it
21. Most ( vehicles - carts - carriages - horses ) need fuel to run.
22. ( Hybrid - Hybird - Highlight - high heels ) vehicles use both petrol and electricity to drive the engine.
23. Some cars use ( electric - electrical - electricity - electronics ) to drive the engine.

24. Experts think people will use more ( electric – electrical – electricity – electronics ) cars in the near future.
25. We can see the pyramids in the ( distant – distance – destination – destiny ).
26. Something that is well-known to you and easy to recognize is ( fabulous – knowing – familiar – shown ).
27. Students can download an ( ape-app-tap-cap) and find the words they want to know
28. I like( chatting- chatting-charting-sharing ) with my friends online.
29. Google play is full of useful ( vehicles- GPS-Apps-feedback).
30. A robot is a ( tool – machine – appliance – advice ) that is controlled by a computer.
31. On holidays, my friends and I (benefit from - find out - go out - write down) and have fun.
32. I need an app which can help me with ( education -translation -communication -action) from one language into another.
33. On holidays, I always ( make – do – have – give ) fun with my young children .
34. My friend has installed a -an ( air conditioning – GPS – pollution – condition ) at his home recently
35. Robots can ( do – make – give – take ) a lot of things that can help us in our daily life .
36. Robots help many companies ( safe – save – safety – safely ) a lot of money.
37. You should make a good ( chaos – shoes – choice – evidence ) if you have the required information.
38. Some teachers like doing a quick ( quotation- quality- quiz-sum) during their lessons.
39. Teachers like offering ( information-feedback-arguments-energy) before explaining their new lessons.
40. When You need something concerning your work , it's better to ( look – find – research – serve ) online.
41. The problem with the (reading- paper-internet-apps) is that , some of the information on it isn't true.
42. Old ( vehicles- software - GPS-Technology) can cause more pollution because their engines don't burn petrol well.
43. You should never share your ( personnel – personally – person – personal ) information online.
44. Criticism and advice are kinds of ( books - robots - philosophy – feedback)
45. His illness is a direct ( cause – result – reason – justification ) of drinking polluted water.
46. I have to ( tell – deny – advert – admit ) that what you have said is true.
47. Egypt is a ( leader – leading – leadership – leadless ) country in the region.
48. Polluting the air will ( direct – cause- lead to -tend to) destroying the world.
49. The( robot- workers-internet- GPS) can do some of the dangerous jobs in factories that man used to do in the past
50. You should ( tell – talk – give – take ) an opinion about this matter.
51. The advantages of inventions are more important than the ( pros -disadvantages - merits -causes)
52. People should use ( worlds – words – wards – weirdoes ) to communicate with each other and to talk.
53. Not everything in modern technology is good. There're surely some( merits - disadvantages - upsides -causes)
54. When you change words into another language, then you are ( transplanting – translating – transporting – transforming ).

55. On the other (face-help-nise- hand ), we should be careful about what we do with our personal details.
56. Healthy food, doing sport and getting enough sleep (improve- lead- appear- annoy)to enjoying good health.
57. The information about how well or badly you did something is called ( news – feedback – research – fastfood ).
58. My two daughters( share- communicate- cycle-divide) some qualities. They both are intelligent, hard-working and helpful.
59. Language ( apes – ups – apps – abs ) are useful because they can help us to remember words.
60. You should ( prove – proof – improve – approve ) your language to get this job.
61. My brother has travelled (aboard-a board- abroad-broad).He is in Saudi Arabia now.
62. I think the tablet is a very important ( tool – appliance – invent – device ).
63. I watched a documentary ( on – of – with – for ) technology last night.
64. Technology may be ( interesting – exhausted – stressful – wonderful ) and can stop people enjoying their free time.
65. What is the advantage of having ( so – too – such – very ) an expensive car.
66. Nowadays , the car can find the place you want to ( arrive – reach – visit – get ) to easily.
67. She has a very good ( memorial – memory – memorized – mortal ) she can remember many people shemet years ago.
68. I love travelling and ( inventing – exposing – discovering – looking ) new cultures and meeting new people.
69. When you travel ( aboard – broad – board – abroad ) you should learn foreign languages well.
70. He likes to cycle around town as he prefers to travel on ( cars – vans – planes – two wheels ).
71. Necessity is the mother of ( invitation -invention -adventure -obligation)
72. I think the internet is the most important invention (in-on- at- by) this age.
73. We had a fruitful discussion ( on – in – at – for ) how technology can improve learning.
74. You should have a good ( degree – grade – grid – label ) to get through the final exam.
75. ( Sail – Walk – Navigate -Travel ) is to find a way when you are travelling from one place to another.
- 76.He was praised for the great project he had ( made – done – given – taken ).
- 77.The ( eason- cause- result-sequence) we have mobile phones is so that people can communicate quickly and easily.
78. Having too many social network accountscan ( make- aloww- lead- do) to a lot of stress.
- 79- The writer thinks that new ( discovery- invitation- invention-GPS ) may cause problems. It is slow.
- 80.-The writer believes that it takes time (understanding – understand- to understand- understands) if a new invention is good or bad.
- 81- Planes and ships used to use the compass but now they use satellite ( navigation - invention -adventure -obligation) system
- 82-The students answered all the questions in the quick ( feedbact-text- quiz-exams) and then checked their scores.
83. My dad uses .....if he doesn't know which road to take.  
a) vehicle                      b) app                      c) translation                      d) GPS
- 84- In the future, we will have the ( technology -invention -internet- robot)to travel to space on our holidays



- 85- Fortunately, the police could ( find- make- do- solve) the mystery and catch the criminal.
- 86- It's very easy to ( find- stay-say- get) around in that city as the public transport is cheap and efficient.
- 87- Most cars, buses and other ( vinegar- vehicles- technology-screens) need petrol, but petrol is becoming more expensive
- 88- ( Hybrid -Highlight -Hygiene -Planes) vehicles use both petrol and electricity to drive the engine.
- 89- Hybrid cars use a lot ( fewer- much- little-less) petrol than the petrol-powered vehicles.
- 90- But technology isn't always a good thing. It can lead to a lot of ( advantages -stress - benefits -apps)
- 91-Technology makes our life ( easier- more difficult-weaker- differently) and you can do things so much faster.

## Grammar

## روابط الشرط ( IF ) Conditionals

شكرا مستر عصام مبرووووك

## o) The Zero Conditional : الحالة الصفرية

مضارع بسيط , مضارع بسيط + If = when

\* تستخدم الحالة الصفرية شرط مؤكّد حدوثه ( مع الحقائق العلمية و الكونية و القوانين الثابتة )

- If water boils , it changes into steam .
- If metals are heated , they expand .
- كما تستخدم للتعبير عن شرط محتمل حدوثه ( مع العادات العامة التي نتحدث عنها بشكل عام و الأشياء التي تأخذ حكم الحقيقة ) ( النتيجة مؤكدة أو منطقية )
- If you sleep eight hours a night , you feel better.
- If you take an asririn , the headache vanishes . يزول.
- If Bassem eats eggs, he always gets sick.
- If I can't sleep , I listen to the radio. ( it is often true that I can't sleep, so I listen to the radio )
- إذا جاء مع الحالة الصفرية زمن أو مدة ( كلمة دالة ) و بها تخصيص ، فإنها تتحول إلى حالات أخرى .
- If he cuts a tree , it dies. ( استخدمنا الحالة الصفرية لعدم وجود تخصيص و لا كلمة زمنية دالة )
- If he cuts this tree tomorrow , it will die. ( استخدمنا الحالة الأولى لوجود كلمة دالة على المستقبل )
- If he cut this tree now , it would die. ( استخدمنا الحالة الثانية لوجود كلمة دالة على المضارع )
- If he had cut this tree yesterday , it would have died. ( استخدمنا الحالة الثالثة لوجود كلمة دالة على الماضي )

## 1) The First Conditional : الحالة الأولى

المصدر + will , can , may

If + مضارع بسيط , { أمر // نهي // ضرورة // طلب مهذب  
Let's // 'd better // 'd rather  
Should في حالة النصيحة

= when = whenever

♦ تستخدم الحالة الأولى للتعبير عن أحداث محتملة الوقوع في المستقبل. ( تنبؤ - وعد - تهديد ) = ( احتمال وقوع الفعل كبير )

- If she studies well, she'll get a place at Oxford. (prediction)
- If you cook dinner tonight, I will do the dishes. (promise)
- If you do that one more time, I won't let you go to the party tomorrow night! (warning)
- If he comes early , I 'll meet him.
- If they don't send me a letter , I'll be sad.
- ♦ كما تعبر الحالة الأولى عن احتمال حقيقي في المضارع :
- If you're hot, I'll buy you a cool drink.

- If you work hard , rest ( you must rest ) for an hour. ( جواب الشرط : أمر مثبت / ضرورة )
- If you feel tired, don't go out ( never go out ). ( جواب الشرط : أمر منفي )
- If you have money , could you lend me some, please? ( جواب الشرط : طلب مهذب )
- If you are angry, let's walk.

♦ يمكن أن تستخدم المضارع التام أو المضارع المستمر بدلا من المضارع البسيط في الحالة الأولى

- If you have finished your meal, I'll clear away the plates.

♦ لاحظ انه يمكن استخدام it is + adj. + to + inf. في الجزء الثاني من الجملة :

- If you go to the desert, it is possible to find work there.

♦ لاحظ صيغة السؤال مع if :

- **What will you do if you find yourself in a dangerous situation?**  
**What will happen if you lose all your money?**

### First vs. Zero Conditional

- تستخدم الحالة الأولى مع المواقف المحددة أما الحالة الصفرية فتستخدم لوصف ما يحدث بشكل عام  
( أي في حالة التخصيص نستخدم الحالة الأولى بدلاً من الحالة الصفرية )

- If plants don't get water, they die. (We talk about plants in general)
- If you don't water these plants, they will die. (We predict what will happen to certain plants)
- If I feel ill, I see a doctor. (This is what I usually do)
- If I feel ill today, I will see a doctor. (This is what may happen only today)
- If you sit in the sun, you get burned  
(Here: We are talking about every time a person sits in the sun)

But:

- If you sit in the sun, you'll get burned.

(Here: I'm talking about what will happen today, another day might be different)

### بدائل if في الحالة الأولى

1- ( من الممكن ان ( should ) تحل محل If في الحالة الأولى )

- **Should** Ali **help** me with my homework , I **will** finish it early .
- Should he **concentrate** , he will understand = if he **concentrates** , he will understand

2- If = as long as = in case = provided (that) = providing = only if + جملة كاملة

- If she **comes** , they will welcome her. = As long as she **comes** , they will welcome her.  
( in case ) أحياناً تدل علي حدوث جواب الشرط قبل فعل الشرط

- I **will take** some traveller's cheque with me **in case** I **run out** of cash .
- I **will take** the umbrella **in case** it **rains** . ( I will take it before it rains )
- I **will take** the umbrella with me if it **rains** . ( I won't take it till it rains first )

3- in case of = in the event of = by = with + ing ( اسم )

- In the event of making noise , I will dismiss **you** . يطرد
- In case of rain , we will cancel the match .
- In case of her coming, I will welcome her

( else / or / otherwise )

- لا حظ الكلمات الآتية ومعناها والا

- You **must take** your umbrella , **or** (otherwise) you will get wet.
- If you **don't take** your umbrella, you **will get** wet
- You **should** study hard **or** ( else ) you will fail
- If you **don't study** hard , you **will** fail

4- Without / But for + noun ( اسم ) = If it + isn't + for + noun

- Without ( but for ) your help , I will die. - If it isn't for your help , I will die

5- unless = if not

- If he doesn't hurry , he won't catch the train
- Unless he hurries , he won't catch the train
- He won't attend the party unless you invite him .
- Unless she does her work properly , she will be dismissed .

## 2) الحالة الثانية : The Second Conditional

**If + ماضي بسيط , المصدر + would, could, might**

\* تستخدم الحالة الثانية للتعبير عن أحداث غير محتمل حدوثها في الحاضر أو المستقبل . ( احتمال وقوع الفعل ضعيف )  
\* وتستخدم أيضا للتعبير عن النصيحة ،

\* وكذلك للتعبير عن الاستحالة ( وفي هذه الحالة يفضل أن تستخدم **were** مع جميع الضمانر. ) (الشرط مناقض للواقع أو حالة وهمية)

- If I **won** a million pounds, I **would stop** teaching. (غير محتمل **improbable**)
- If I **had** wings, I **would fly**. ( I don't have wings and I won't fly )
- If he **were** taller, he'd **be** good at basketball. ( We do not believe that he will be taller. )
- If he **came** early , I'd **meet** him.
- If I **were** you, I **would help** him.
- If I **were** a doctor, I'd **help** him.
- If I **was/were** offered a ticket, I'd **take** it.

♦ لاحظ استخدام **might** في حالة وجود **perhaps**

- He **had** no friends. **Perhaps** that's why he **felt** lonely.

♦ وفي حالة السؤال :

**What + would + do + if + (ماضي بسيط) ؟**

- ☆ What you would do if your car was stolen? ☆ I'd tell the police.

### **FIRST VS. SECOND CONDITIONAL**

- تستخدم الحالة الأولى مع المواقف المحتملة / المتوقعة الحدث أما الحالة الثانية فتستخدم لوصف المواقف المناقضة للواقع

- **In winter**: If it rains tomorrow, I will not go to work. (حالة أولى : الحدث محتمل)
- **In summer**: If it rained tomorrow, I would not go to work. (حالة ثانية : الحدث مستبعد)
- If she studies harder, she'll pass the exam  
(I think it's possible she will study harder and so she'll pass)
- If she studied harder, she would pass the exam  
(I think that she **won't study** harder, or it's very unlikely, and so she **won't pass**)

### **ZERO VS. SECOND CONDITIONAL**

- تستخدم الحالة الصفرية للتعبير عن الواقع أما الحالة الثانية فتعبر عن عكس الواقع.

(عكس الحقيقة = حالة ثانية)

- If you boil an egg, it becomes solid. (فرض واقعي : حالة صفرية)
- If I were a bird, I would fly. (فرض خيالي : حالة ثانية)
- If you heat ice, it melts. (فرض واقعي : حالة صفرية)
- Without air, living things would die. (فرض خيالي : حالة ثانية)

لاحظ الجمل الآتية

- .If I **had** written homework , I **would do** it at once.
- If he **were** paralysed , he **would have to use** a wheelchair.

بدائل حالة **If** الثانية

١- يمكن استخدام ( **were / Had ? Should** ) بدلاً من ( **If** ) في الحالة الثانية :

في الحالة الثانية يأتي بعدها اسم مملوك ( **had** ) لاحظ ان

- **Had** I new suit . I **would go** to the party.
- **Had** I a complicated problem , I **would consult** my teacher.

٢- لاحظ استخدام المصدر مع **should**

- If it were fine , I would go out . = **Should** it **be** fine , I **would go** out  
= **Should** my father **have** a car , he **would collect** me from school every day .

٣- لاحظ استخدام **were** مع الصفة او الاسم او التصريف الثالث في المبني للمجهول في الجمل الآتية

- **Were** I rich , I **would help** them.
- **Were** they rewarded , they **would better** job next time
- **Were** I a doctor , I **would help** you

٤- لاحظ استخدام **to** قبل الفعل الأساسي عندما نستخدم ( **Were** ) بدلاً من **If**

- **Were** he **to study** hard, he **would pass** the exam.
- **Were** he **to study** hard , he **would get** full marks.

5-Without / But for اسم noun + لولا - بدون = If it + weren't + for + noun

- **Without ( but for )** your help , I would die = **If it weren't for** your help , I would die

3) **The Third Conditional : الحالة الثالثة**

**If + ماضي تام , ( would, could, might ) have + PP.**

\* نستخدم الحالة الثالثة للتعبير عن تخيل عكس ما تم في الماضي / و في حالة الندم.

- If I had seen her , I would have told her the news.
- If I had had a baby , I wouldn't have left the country.
- If we had not been late, we would have seen the tennis match.  
(We were late, so we did not see the tennis match.)
- If you had seen him you could have spoken to him.  
(You did not see him so you could not speak to him.)

♦ لاحظ استخدام **might** في حالة وجود **perhaps**

If he had had friends, he might not have felt lonely.

♦ يمكن أن تأتي **if** في منتصف الجملة في جميع الحالات :

- He would have seen the Statue of Liberty if he had travelled to New York.

### بدائل حالة If الثالثة

1- يمكن استخدام ( Had ) بدلا من ( If ) في الحالة الثالثة كالآتي

- Had it rained so heavily , we would have floods.
- Had he followed the instructions, the machine wouldn't have stopped.

**2- Without / but for + اسم = if it hadn't been for + ing ( اسم )**

- But for ( without ) his help, I would have failed .
- If it hadn't been for your help , I would have failed .
- Unless it had been for your help , I would have failed

### Second vs. Third Conditional

- تعبر الثالثة عن شرط مستحيل حدوثه لأنه قد تم عكسه في الماضي و لكن الحالة الثانية تعبر عن شرط مستحيل حدوثه في المضارع أو المستقبل علي الرغم أن شكل الأزمنة ماضي.

- If I were the president, I would lower taxes. (I am not the president.)
- I would go on vacation if I had money now. (I don't have enough money now.)
- I would have gone on vacation if my company had given me the time off.  
(They didn't have the time off.)
- If I had met her, I would have told her the news. (Unfortunately, I didn't meet her.)
- Tom would have helped us if he had known we were there.  
(Tom didn't know we were there, and so he didn't help us.)

لاحظ الفرق بين حالات الشرط في الأمثلة التالية

- 1 If it is cold, plants die.
- 2 If it is cold, our plants will die.
- 3 If it was cold, our plants would die.
- 4 If it had been cold, our plants would have died.

### EXERCISES ON GRAMMAR

**1 – Choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d :**

1. If you finish your work on the computer , .....it off .  
a) will switch                      b) switch                      c) switches                      d) would switch
2. Plants can grow without soil ..... they get food from water.  
a) as much as                      b) as far as                      c) as long as                      d) as many as
3. .... he understand the story if he read the summary?  
a) Will                      b) Did                      c) Would                      d) Can
4. If you are interviewed for a job , you .....wear a tie .

- a) will have to                      b) wear                      c) should                      d) have
5. She couldn't have gone out during the eclipse if she ..... superstitious.  
a) was                      b) had been                      c) were                      d) is
6. I ..... out if it is stormy.  
a) wouldn't go                      b) won't go                      c) wouldn't have gone                      d) hadn't gone
7. He won't do any work ..... you pay him first.  
a) without                      b) unless                      c) so                      d) in order to
8. Pilots won't be able to fly a plane unless they .....  
a) will train                      b) had trained                      c) are trained                      d) were trained
9. If we don't go now, we ..... catch the bus.  
a) won't                      b) wouldn't                      c) didn't                      d) couldn't
10. If it ..... cloudy, we may not see the eclipse.  
a) were                      b) was                      c) is                      d) had been
11. Keep the receipt ..... you want to change the goods.  
a) in case of                      b) unless                      c) without                      d) in case
12. If the brain doesn't get enough oxygen , it .....  
a) will die                      b) dies                      c) may die                      d) die
13. If Wael lost his job, he ..... look for work in the city.  
a) will                      b) would                      c) will not                      d) would not
14. I wouldn't have reached this stage unless she ..... me.  
a) was helping                      b) helped                      c) would help                      d) had helped
15. If you strip the bark off a tree , it .....  
a) died                      b) is dying                      c) dies                      d) will die
16. What ..... if it rained next June?  
a) will you do                      b) may you do                      c) can you do                      d) would you do
17. .... fire, leave the building as quickly as possible.  
a) In case                      b) But for                      c) If                      d) In case of
18. .... very happy if you achieved your goals?  
a) You would be                      b) Would you have been                      c) You will be                      d) Would you be
19. I'll give you the day off ..... you work on Saturday morning.  
a) unless                      b) in case of                      c) otherwise                      d) on condition that
20. If she hadn't learned how to type, she ..... so many books.  
a) will write                      b) would have written                      c) wouldn't have written                      d) would write
21. .... him today, she would know what happened.  
a) If she meets                      b) Had she met                      c) Were she to meet                      d) Will she meet
22. If he hadn't bought a car, he ..... that accident.  
a) didn't have                      b) wouldn't have had                      c) would have                      d) wouldn't have
23. If he hadn't driven so fast, he ..... that accident.  
a) wouldn't have                      b) wouldn't have had                      c) didn't have                      d) hadn't had
24. If he ..... more sociable , he would have more friends .  
a) was                      b) had been                      c) had had                      d) is
25. If I ..... my new car , I wouldn't have a comfortable means of transport  
a) had sold                      b) sold                      c) sell                      d) have sold
26. Would Ahmed be angry if I ..... his bicycle without asking ?  
a) take                      b) will take                      c) took                      d) had taken
27. But for blood banks, many people .....  
a) die                      b) died                      c) would die                      d) will die
28. If we leave now, we ..... the train.  
a) catch                      b) will catch                      c) would catch                      d) might have caught
29. If I ..... the exam, I'll be very happy.  
a) passed                      b) have passed                      c) had passed                      d) pass
30. Provided you look after it, you ..... borrow this DVD.  
a) can                      b) could                      c) might                      d) would



31. If you had got the job, you ..... in Luxor.  
 a) would live      b) would have lived      c) will have lived      d) will live
32. You can borrow my car ..... you drive carefully.  
 a) unless      b) provides      c) as long as      d) in case of
33. I'll come this evening ..... I have to work late.  
 a) if      b) as long as      c) unless      d) In case of
34. If you worked harder, you ..... higher marks.  
 a) will get      b) will have got      c) would get      d) can get
35. If people lived on the moon, they ..... tired and bored.  
 a) will be      b) may be      c) would have been      d) would be
36. If I ..... ten years younger, I'd go mountaineering.  
 a) were      b) am      c) have been      d) are
37. If he ..... on time, he wouldn't have missed the bus.  
 a) left      b) have left      c) would leave      d) had left
38. If I ..... more time, I would visit my friends in Dubai.  
 a) have      b) had      c) had had      d) would have
39. If you ..... harder, you would have passed the test.  
 a) work      b) worked      c) has worked      d) had worked
40. .... very happy if you achieved your goals ?  
 a) You would be      b) Would you have been      c) You will be      d) Would you be
41. The sea will be polluted ..... we stop dumping oil and rubbish into it.  
 a) as long as      b) if      c) so that      d) unless
42. If he had remembered to set the alarm clock, Hany ..... woken up late.  
 a) would have      b) wouldn't have      c) have been      d) would be
43. The Red Sea resorts will be popular ..... they remain unpolluted.  
 a) if not      b) provided that      c) so as      d) unless
44. You won't be able to achieve your goal ..... you work hard.  
 a) if      b) as long as      c) provided      d) unless
45. Unless he had followed my advice, he ..... all his money.  
 a) would have lost      b) would have a loss      c) wouldn't lose      d) wouldn't have lost
- 46- If you ..... the time of his arrival, please tell me.  
 a) knew      b) know      c) had known      d) will know
- 47- If you stand on the table, it .....  
 a) will collapse      b) would collapse      c) would have collapsed      d) has collapsed
- 48- He won't join the university ..... he passes the exam.  
 a) unless      b) but for      c) in case of      d) provided that
- 49- If you go out, please ..... me some cookies.  
 a) get      b) will get      c) would get      d) would have got
- 50- ..... he study hard, he will get high marks.  
 a) If      b) Were      c) Should      d) Had
- 50- ..... he to study hard, he would get high marks.  
 a) If      b) Were      c) Should      d) Had
- 51- Don't ring me ..... it's important.  
 a) if      b) in case of      c) but for      d) unless
- 52- Take this medicine with you ..... you feel tired.  
 a) if it      b) unless      c) in case      d) without
- 53- If you hear any news, ..... you let me know immediately?  
 a) would      b) should      c) can      d) might
- 54- If he ..... late, we will go without him.  
 a) was      b) were      c) is      d) can be
- 55- He won't catch the train if he ..... soon.  
 a) didn't pack      b) will not pack      c) doesn't pack      d) hadn't packed

- 56- If I had to add two long numbers together in my head, it ..... me two or three minutes.  
a) takes      b) will take      c) would take      d) can take
- 57- If I remember Ali's address, I ..... and tell you.  
a) phone      b) will phone      c) would phone      d) could phone
- 58- I'll help you with your homework if you ..... it difficult.  
a) find      b) will find      c) found      d) had found
- 59- If you don't hear a person's question, ..... them to repeat it.  
a) will ask      b) would ask      c) can ask      d) ask
- 60- He ..... a lot better if he shaved more often .  
a) will look      b) may look      c) would look      d) would have looked
- 61- If you ..... what I say, ask your mother.  
a) won't believe      b) didn't believe      c) don't believe      d) hadn't believed
- 62- Without ..... the questions carefully, You couldn't answer them correctly.  
a) read      b) have read      c) reading      d) is reading
- 63- I ..... very angry if he makes any more mistakes.  
a) would be      b) will be      c) would have been      d) might be
- 64- If I had no money, I ..... some from you.  
a) will borrow      b) would borrow      c) may borrow      d) would have borrow
- 65- If water freezes, it ..... into ice.  
a) will turn      b) turns      c) would turn      d) turned
- 66- If I ..... thirsty, I'd drink some water.  
a) were      b) am      c) had been      d) have been
- 67- I wouldn't be able to read if I ..... my glasses.  
a) lose      b) lost      c) will lose      d) had lost
- 68- If I can't sleep at night, I ..... an aspirin.  
a) take      b) would take      c) might take      d) took
- 69- If I ..... more time, I'd visit my friends in Dubai.  
a) has      b) had      c) had had      d) has had
- 70- ..... your help, he wouldn't get the job.  
a) If      b) Unless      c) Without      d) Should
- 71- Water ..... if it is heated.  
a) will vaporize      b) vaporizes      c) might vaporize      d) would vaporize
- 72- ..... a proper plan, you can't reach your goals  
a) Without      b) If      c) Unless      d) In case of
- 73- Plants die if they ..... get enough water.  
a) didn't      b) don't      c) won't      d) wouldn't
- 74- ..... she take the lesson, she will understand.  
a) If      b) Should      c) Were      d) Had
- 75- ..... he studied, he would have succeeded.  
a) Unless      b) Should      c) Were      d) Had
- 76- We can't progress ..... hard work.  
a) unless      b) without      c) if      d) in case of
- 77- Unless he ..... early, he won't meet the manager.  
a) doesn't come      b) comes      c) didn't come      d) came
- 78- ..... he to work hard, he would earn a lot of money.  
a) Unless      b) Should      c) Were      d) Had
- 79- They will find the lost boy ..... searching carefully.  
a) Except if      b) without      c) in case      d) in case of
- 80- Iron expands if it .....  
a) cool      b) will cool      c) cooled      d) is cooled
- 81- If I feel tired, I usually ..... to bed early.  
a) go      b) will go      c) would go      d) went
- 82- Without the Nile, we ..... of thirst.

- a) will die      b) die      c) would die      d) died
- 83- I would write to him if I knew his address, but I ..... it.  
a) know      b) didn't know      c) knew      d) don't know
- 84- I would have written to him if I had known his address, but I ..... it.  
a) know      b) didn't know      c) knew      d) don't know
- 85- ..... I a bird, I'd fly.  
a) Had      b) Were      c) If      d) Should
- 86- If he had enough time, he would come with me. Unfortunately, he .....  
a) wasn't      b) didn't      c) isn't      d) doesn't
- 86- If he had had enough time, he would have come with me. Unfortunately, he .....  
a) wasn't      b) didn't      c) isn't      d) doesn't
- 87- If he hadn't been busy, he would have come with me. Unfortunately, he .....  
a) wasn't      b) didn't      c) isn't      d) was
- 87- If he were not busy, he would come with me. Unfortunately, he .....  
a) is      b) did      c) does      d) was
- 88- If the money I had ( was - was - had been -had ) enough , I would have bought a car
- 88- If the car I had ( was - had had - had been -had) a powerful engine , I wouldn't have sold it
89. If he had been Shikabala, he would have supported his players. This sentences means....  
a. He was Shikabala and he supported his players.  
b. He wasn't Shikabala and he didn't support his players.  
c. He isn't Shikabala and he doesn't support his players.  
d. He supported his players because he was Shikabala
90. If I were rich ,I would help the poor. This sentences means.....  
a. He was richand he will help the poor.      b. He is rich and he will help the poor.  
c. he won't help the poor as he is poor      d. He is rich so he will help the poor

## Skills

### Choose the best translation

١- من الصعب زياره كثيرا من الاماكن في مصر لانها معزوله وبعده لذا يجب توفير مواصلات امنه للوصول اليها او انشاء فنادق بالقرب منها

- 1- It is difficult to visit many places in Egypt as they are isolating and very distant .Thus, we must provide safe means of transport to reach there or build nearby hotels.
- 2- It is difficult to visit many places in Egypt as they are isolated and very distance .Thus, we must provide safe means of transport to reach there or build nearby hotels.
- 3- It is difficult to visit many places in Egypt as they are isolated and very distant .Thus, we must improve safe means of transport to reach there or build nearby hotels.
- 4- It is difficult to visit many places in Egypt as they are isolated and very distant .Thus, we must provide safe means of transport to reach there or build nearby hotels.

٢- التنمية المستدامة هي استراتيجية تهدف الى تحقيق أهداف التنمية البشرية مع الحفاظ في الوقت نفسه على الموارد الطبيعية التي يعتمد عليها الاقتصاد والمجتمع

- A. Sustainable development is a strategy that aims to achieve humane development goals while simultaneously preserving the natural sources that the economy and society rely on.
- B. Social development is a strategy that aims to achieve human development goals while simultaneously preserving the natural resources that the country and society rely on.
- C. Sustainable development is a strategy that aims to achieve human development goals while simultaneously preserving the natural resources that the economy and society rely on.
- D. Sustainable development is a strategy that needs to achieve human development plans while simultaneously preserving the natural resources that the economy and society rely on.

٣. سوق العمل لم تعد الخبرة وحدها هي العامل الاساسي الذي يضعه أصحاب الأعمال في الاعتبار، هناك مهارات العمل التي لا تقل اهمية عن الخبرة

- A. In the labour market, experiment alone is no longer the main factor that are work skills that are more employers take into consideration; there important than experience.
- B. In the labour market, experience alone is no longer the main factor that are work skills that are no less employers take into consideration; there important than experience.

C. In the labour market, experience alone is still the main factor that important than skills. Employers take into consideration; it is more important than experience.

D. In the labour market, experience alone is no longer the main factor that are work skills that are not as employees take into consideration; there important as experience.

**4. Without motivation in life, it's hard to strive for success and achieve internal happiness.**

**You should try to achieve more success for yourself first before trying to please other people.**

A. بدون مشاكل الحياة ، من السهل السعي لتحقيق الطموح وتحقيق السعادة الداخلية. يجب أن تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح لإرضاء نفسك أولاً قبل محاولة إرضاء الآخرين.

B. بدون الدافع في الحياة ، من الصعب السعي لتحقيق النجاح وتحقيق السعادة الداخلية. يجب أن تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح لنفسك أولاً قبل محاولة إرضاء الآخرين.

C. بدون الدافع في الحياة ، من السهل السعي لتحقيق النجاح وتحقيق الذات. يجب أن تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح لنفسك أولاً قبل محاولة إرضاء الآخرين.

D. بدون الدافع في الحياة ، من الصعب السعي لتحقيق النجاح وتحقيق السعادة مع الآخرين. يجب أن تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح لاثبات ذاتك أولاً قبل محاولة إرضاء الآخرين

**5. Accepting others is a highly civilised aspect that we all should have. You can express your opinion and respect the opinions of others as well.**

a. يُعتبر قبول الآخر سمة متحضرة للغاية يجب أن نتحلى بها جميعاً. يمكنك التعبير عن رأيك واحترام آراء الآخرين أيضاً.

b. يُعتبر قبول الآخر سمة متعصبة للغاية يجب أن نتحلى بها جميعاً. يمكنك التعبير عن رأيك واحترام الآخرين أيضاً.

c. يُعتبر قبول الآخر سمة متحضرة للغاية يجب أن نتحلى بها جميعاً. يمكنك التعبير عن رأيك والاحتراس من آراء الآخرين أيضاً.

d. يُعتبر قبول الآخر سمة سيئة للغاية يجب أن نتحلى عنها جميعاً. يمكنك التعبير عن رأيك واحترام آراء الآخرين أيضاً

**6. Today tourism has become a huge business. It is a good source of national income for countries on the Mediterranean coast. Hence, we have to attract more tourists to visit Egypt all year round by building more comfortable hotels and making all tourist facilities available.**

١. لقد أصبحت السياحة اليوم عمل ضخماً فهي مصدر جيد للعملة الصعبة للدول التي تطل على البحر المتوسط. ومن ثم علينا ان نجذب المزيد من السياح لزيارة مصر طوال اليوم وذلك عن طريق بناء المزيد من الفنادق وتقديم كل التسهيلات السياحية المتاحة .

٢. لقد أصبحت السياحة اليوم عمل ضخماً فهي مصدر جيد للدخل القومي للدول التي تطل على البحر المتوسط. ومن ثم علينا ان نجذب المزيد من السياح لزيارة مصر طوال العام وذلك عن طريق بناء المزيد من الفنادق وتقديم كل التسهيلات السياحية المتاحة .

٣. لقد أصبحت السياحة اليوم عمل ضخماً فهي مصدر جيد للدخل القومي للدول التي تطل على البحر المتوسط. ومن ثم علينا ان نجذب المزيد من السياح لزيارة مصر طوال العام وذلك عن طريق بناء المزيد من الفنادق وتقديم كل المشاريع الثقافية المتاحة .

٤. لقد أصبحت السياحة اليوم عمل ضخماً فهي مصدر جيد للدخل القومي للدول التي تقع في البحر المتوسط. ومن ثم علينا ان نجذب بعض من السياح لزيارة مصر طوال العام وذلك عن طريق بناء المزيد من الفنادق وتقديم كل التسهيلات السياحية المتاحة

## Chapter 8

**Jim Hawkins:**

We prepared our weapons and the captain told us what to do.

“Doctor, you stay by the door. **Hunter**, stay at the east of the fort. Joyce can stand at the west. Gray and **Trelawney** will stay at the north. If the pirates get inside the north of the fort, we’re in trouble.”

After an hour, Joyce said that he saw someone coming. We all looked and listened, and we got our weapons ready. Suddenly, Joyce fired his gun. Then, we heard guns firing at us from all sides of the fort. There was a lot of noise and smoke, but nobody was hurt. Then everything went quiet again.

“Did you hit anyone?” the captain asked Joyce. “I don’t think so,” he replied.

“How many people fired on your side, Doctor?” asked **Captain Smollett**.

“There were three,” he replied. “How many on your side, **Trelawney**?”

**Trelawney** and Gray were not sure. They thought seven, eight or nine. There was only one shot fired from the east and west. So, we knew that the pirates wanted to attack mostly from the north. But **Captain Smollett** told us to stay where we were. We didn’t have much time to talk. A group of pirates ran from the trees towards the north of the fort, and their guns started firing again.

Some of the pirates tried to climb the fence, but Joyce shot two of them and one ran back to the trees. However, four were now inside the fences and seven more

continued to fire at us from the trees.

Our men fired at the four pirates, but did not hit them. They were now running up the hill to the fort, and one of them climbed up and took **Hunter's** gun. Another ran in through the door, where the doctor killed him.

**Captain Smollett** then told us to go to the other side of the fort. I ran there quickly, and suddenly found one of the pirates, **Anderson**, in front of me. He was going to attack me with his sword, but Gray saw him and killed him before I was hurt. At the same time, the pirates inside the fences were killed by our guns. I was safe, but others were not. Poor Joyce and Hunter were dead and **Captain Smollett** was hurt. "Have the pirates gone?" asked **Captain Smollett** weakly.

"Some of them have gone," said Doctor **Livesy**, "but five of them will never walk again." "That's good," said **Captain Smollett**. "There are fewer pirates for us to fight. I know that we can win."

The pirates did not return that day, so we had time to eat and look after the people who were hurt. Doctor **Livesy** said that **Captain Smollett** would get better, but he should not walk or even talk if he didn't need to.

In the early afternoon, Doctor **Livesy** took his hat and a gun, then he put the map in his pocket and left the fort. "What is he doing?" asked Gray when we saw him walk into the trees. "Is he crazy?" "The doctor has a plan," I said. "I think he's going to visit **Ben Gun**." That afternoon, I thought about where the doctor was. I

remembered how good it felt to walk through the trees and on the beach. It was much nicer than staying inside the hot fort. I decided to take some biscuits and a gun. I wanted to go down to the rocks where **Ben Gun** said there was a boat. When nobody was looking, I quietly left the fort. I walked quickly towards the east of the island. It was now late afternoon but the sun was still high. As I went nearer to the coast, the wind became stronger and it wasn't as hot. Soon I could see the big waves of the blue sea and then I walked down the beach, feeling happy.

At the end of the beach I climbed a hill. I could see the **Hispaniola**, with the pirate flag flying in the wind. And I could see **Silver** in one of the small boats, talking to his men. I could not hear what they said, although I could hear the cry of the parrot, Captain **Flint**.

The sun was going down and soon there was a mist. I knew that I needed to be quick and find the boat that evening. It took me a long time to walk to the white rock where **Ben Gun** said his boat was. It was nearly dark when I finally found it inside a tent made of animal skins. It was badly made from old wood and it was very small, although I thought that it would be very fast on water. Now I had my own plan. I thought that I could go the **Hispaniola** in the night and cut the rope to the anchor. So, I ate my biscuits while I waited for it to become dark. When I stood up later, there was mist everywhere. I picked up the boat and carried it to the beach. In the darkness, I could just see a fire where the pirates were sleeping in the trees, and another distant light from the **Hispaniola**. I put the small boat into the water, and began my journey to the ship.

I found that the boat was very difficult to steer, but the wind helped me to get to the **Hispaniola**. Soon, I was next to the big ship and I began cutting the thick anchor rope. I could now hear some of the pirates talking on the ship. One of the men was called **Hands**, but I did not know the other man. They both seemed angry. The rope finally broke, and I moved away from the ship. As I was leaving, I saw a light in one of the windows where the sailors were talking. I don't know why, but I decided to look into the window. I saw that **Hands** and the other pirate were fighting each other.

I sat down in the boat, but I realised that the wind was taking me quickly out to sea. Now it no longer had the anchor rope, the wind was moving the **Hispaniola**, too! The wind took my boat into large waves. I closed my eyes and waited for a terrible end, dreaming of my home and the **Admiral Benbow**. The next thing I knew, it was

light and I found myself in the boat on the south-west end of Treasure Island. The sun was up, but I couldn't see it because of the high cliffs on this side of the island. There were big waves hitting the rocks below, and it would be impossible for me to take the boat to the shore. I remembered that on the map, there was a place called **Cape of Woods**. This was a place of tall trees and it also had a beach. I would try to get there. The boat sailed well, but when I tried to steer it, the boat hit the waves and I was soon completely wet. I realised, however, that if I lay down in the boat, it found its way through the waves on its own. I used a paddle to steer the boat a little, and it moved very slowly towards the **Cape of Woods**.

### Questions and answers:

1. Do you think Captain Smollett was a good captain? Why/Why not ?

Yes, because he made good decisions in the fight with the pirates.

2. Why do you think the north was the weakest side in the fort?

- As Captain Smollett asked two men to attack it.

3- The pirates tried to enter the fort . Was that right? Why?

- No as it would be easy for the men inside it to kill them

4. Why did Captain Smollett say, "I know that we can win after the fight" ?

There were fewer pirates now because some of them died in the fight.

5. What was Jim's plan when he saw the little boat ? was his plan successful till the end?

- He planned to cut the rope of the anchor to make the ship float away. This plan was a success until his boat was carried in the waves.

6. Jim was brave. Explain.

- He left the fort alone and went to the ship to cut the rope of the anchor.

7. Was Jim right to cut the rope on the Hispaniola? Why/Why not?

He wasn't right as the wind led his boat large waves and he waited to die

8. Why did Jim expect a "terrible end" ?

- He thought that his boat was going to sink.

9. Jim was lucky. Why do you think that?

- As he didn't die when he couldn't control the boat.

10 . Why do you think Dr Livesy wanted to find Ben Gun ?

- He wanted to ask him about the place of the treasure.

11. Why do you think Dr Livesy left the fort alone?

- as he wanted to find Ben Gun.

### Test unit eight

1 Choose two correct answers out of the five options given:

1. When my friend insulted me, it was so annoying. The synonym of the word "annoying" is.....

a) relaxing      b) disturbing      c) pleasant      d) troublesome      e) horrible

2. In such a small town it was surprising to find so many really good restaurants.

The synonym of the word "surprising" is.....

a) astonishing      b) amazing      c) anxious      d) cautious      e) severe

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- While waiting for the train to leave, the passengers ..... to each other.

a- said      b- chatted      c- told      d- conversation

2- Do you think the ..... cars will solve the problem of petrol shortage .

a- race      b- hybrid      c- fast      d- petrol-powered

3- The ..... helps me to download my favourite singer's songs

a- internet      b- radio      c- vehicle      d- GPS

4- The teacher read us a ..... about Gulliver's travels in arabic.

a- transplant      b- transfusion      c- translation      d- transmit

5- You shouldn't ..... around alone.

a- go      b- find      c- get      d- bring

6- If you ..... this icon on the street , you will find all the information you need.

a- wreck      b- deck      c- lock      d- click

7- If the tree fell down, it ..... the road.

a- will block      b- may block      c- would block      d- would have blocked



8- If there ..... an accident, there would be a traffic jam.

a- is                      b- was                      c- had been                      d- has been

9- If there had been a traffic jam, everyone ..... late for work.

a- will be                      b- would be                      c- was                      d- would have been

10. Without the rescuers' efforts, many people.....

a- died                      b- are dying                      c- have died                      d- would have died

11.If I ..... time, I usually walk to work.

a- have                      b- had                      c- had had                      d- have had

a- am                      b- had been                      c- were                      d- am being

12. .... he applied for the job, he would have got it.

a- Had                      b- If                      c- Were                      d- Without

13. If you don't want to get lost, ..... a map with you.

a- would take                      b- take                      c- will take                      d- would have taken

14----- is advice , criticism or information about how good or useful something is

a- The benefit                      b- The app                      c- Feedback                      d- The internet

15. If I ( am - had - had been - were ) you, I'd help them.

### 3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Everyone has one hobby or another .Of all hobbies; I do believe that reading is the simplest and most useful. How can we increase the benefits of reading and make it easier? I think that we should start a book club for secondary and university students in our town. We could read both Arabic and English books. We could have meetings every week or two in the summer, and once a month during the school year.

Here are the reasons for which I think we should have book clubs. First, if we have a book club, it will encourage us to read more. It is known that if people read a lot, they write better. So, this will help us in two ways. Secondly, we will develop some responsibility if we take turns leading the discussion at meetings. The leader will have to read the book carefully. Thirdly, discussing books will help us to overcome any shyness. Everyone will have to say something.

Reading good books will be a better way to use our time than playing computer games or reading comic books. Don't you agree with me?

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The best title for this passage is .....

a Merits of joining book clubs                      b Reading becomes useless.  
c People are no longer interested in reading                      d Disadvantages of joining book clubs

2. What psychological effect does membership in book clubs have?

a It helps members to get over their shyness.                      b It helps members to write better.  
c. It helps to decrease leadership responsibilities.                      d It helps people to be lonely

3. According to the passage, the word "**overcome**" means .....

a. Surrender                      b give up                      c defeat                      d lose

4. After reading the passage, what type of books does the writer think less useful?

a. Science books                      b Adventure books                      c Fiction books                      d Comic books

5. What happens if people read a lot?

a. They join book clubs.                      b They learn to write better.  
c. They can't lead a discussion.                      d They are very shy.

6. The writer thinks that.....

a. book clubs encourage reading                      b book clubs distribute books  
c. should read books only                      d readers should not make discussions

7. ....is a good way for spending time.

a. Reading                      b Fighting                      c Disagreement                      d Meetings

8. The first paragraph deals with .....

a. The importance of book                      b The benefits of reading alone  
c. Many hobbies are better than reading                      d advantages of reading

**4. Choose the correct English translation:**

الحروب هي السبب الرئيسي لدمار اقتصاد كثير من الدول لانها تتركس كل مواردها البشرية والزراعية والصناعية لهذا الغرض بالاضافة الي ذلك يفقد كثير من الابرياء ارواحهم

- Wars are the main cause of destroying the economy of many countries as countries devote all its human, agricultural, and industrial resources for that purpose. In addition to that, huge numbers of the innocent lose their lives in these wars.
- Wars are the main cause of destruction the economy of many countries as countries devote all its human, agriculture, and industrial resources for that purpose. In addition to that, huge numbers of the innocent lose their lives in these wars.
- Wars are the main cause of destroying the economy of many countries as countries devote all its human, agricultural, and industrial resources for that purpose. In addition to that, huge numbers of the innocent lose their life in this wars.
- Wars are the main cause of destroying the economy of many countries as they devote all their human, agricultural, and industrial resources for this purpose. In addition to that, huge numbers of the innocent lose their lives in these wars.

**2. All living creatures need to cooperate in order to achieve their goals. Teamwork, which means the ability of a group to work wee together, is something we cannot do without.**

**Teamwork, together with tolerance, is essential for the success of any project.**

١- تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق اهدافها فالعمل الجماعي والذي يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هى الا شيء يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي و التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى المشاريع.

٢- تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق اهدافها فالعمل المجتمعي والذي يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هى الا شيء لا يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي مع التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى أى مشروع.

٣- تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق اهدافها فالعمل الجماعي والذي يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هى الا شيء لا يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي بدون التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى أى مشروع.

٤- تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق اهدافها فالعمل الجماعي والذي يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هى الا شيء لا يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي مع التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى أى مشروع.

**5. The Novel**

- During the fight , Jim was lucky . Do you agree ? why?
- Why do you think Joyce was the first to fire his gun at the pirates?
- Why did Captain Smollett say, "I know that we can win after the fight" ?

**6) Write an essay of 150 words about one of the following topics:**

- Face book as a social media

# Unit Nine

## Vocabulary

### A good education

By: Mr El Sebaei Atteya

|           |           |              |             |               |            |
|-----------|-----------|--------------|-------------|---------------|------------|
| education | تعليم     | importance   | أهمية       | according to  | طبقاً لـ   |
| author    | مؤلف      | housekeeper  | مديرة منزل  | science       | علم - علوم |
| orphan    | يتيم      | instead of   | بدلاً من    | technology    | تكنولوجيا  |
| orphanage | دار أيتام | care about   | يهتم بـ     | engineering   | هندسة      |
| cousins   | أبناء عم  | success      | النجاح      | maths         | رياضيات    |
| wealthy   | ثري       | fail         | يفشل        | so-called     | يدعي       |
| owner     | مالك      | failure      | فشل - فشل   | bridge        | كوبري      |
| governess | مربية     | later life   | حياة أخرى   | keen on - to  | حريص       |
| cruel to  | قاسي      | lose touch   | يفقد اتصال  | skill         | مهارة      |
| cruelty   | قسوة      | contact with | اتصال بـ    | run           | يدر        |
| employ    | يوظف      | friendship   | صداقة       | comfortable   | مرتاح      |
| lovely    | جميل      | upset        | يزعج        | huge          | ضخم        |
| save      | ينقذ      | discuss      | يناقش       | previous      | السابق     |
| servant   | خادم      | solve        | يحل         | pupil         | تلميذ      |
| lose      | يفقد      | solution to  | حل          | energy        | طاقة       |
| secret    | سر        | solver       | الحلال      | regard        | يعتبر      |
| summary   | ملخص      | angry with   | غاضب من     | regards       | تحيات      |
| kindness  | طيبة      | argue with   | يجادل مع    | appreciate    | يقدر       |
| honesty   | أمانة     | get on well  | ينسجم       | collocation   | تجميع      |
| century   | قرن       | do a course  | يأخذ دورة   | support       | يدعم       |
| bullying  | تنمر      | serious      | جاد         | advertiseme   | إعلان      |
| bully     | بلطجي     | seriousness  | جدية        | advertise     | يعلن       |
| as well   | أيضاً     | artist       | فنان        | reach         | يصل        |
| practise  | يمارس     | musician     | موسيقيار    | shallow       | ضحل        |
| realise   | يدرك      | torch        | كشاف - شعلة | shoulder      | كتف        |
| fun       | متعة      | bandage      | ضمادة       | wound         | جرح        |
| abilities | قدرات     | catch        | يمسك        | wreck         | حطام       |
| critical  | نقدي      | deck         | ظهر مركب    | expert in- on | خبير       |
| criticism | نقد       | flat         | مسطح        | stranger      | غريب       |

### Definitions

|                     |                                                                       |                    |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| bullying            | The use of strength , power to frighten or hurt someone who is weaker | البلطجة            |
| cruel               | Having a desire to cause pain and suffering                           | قاسي               |
| governess           | A woman employed to teach the children of a rich family at home       | مربية              |
| housekeeper         | A woman whose job is to manage a house                                | مديرة منزل         |
| orphan              | A child whose parents are dead                                        | يتيم               |
| servant             | A person working in another person's house to cook , clean etc        | خادم               |
| keep in touch with  | To communicate with somebody by writing or telephoning them           | يكون علي اتصال مع  |
| lose touch with     | Stop communicating with somebody                                      | يفد الاتصال        |
| make friends        | Make a friend with somebody                                           | يصادق              |
| do an online course | A series of lessons or lectures on a particular subject               | يأخذ دوره علي النت |

|                        |                                                                 |              |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>boarding school</b> | A school where students can live during the school year         | مدرسه داخلية |
| <b>stranger</b>        | Someone you don't know or someone in a new and unfamiliar place | غريب         |
| <b>failure</b>         | Lack of success in doing or achieving something                 | فشل          |
| <b>success</b>         | The fact that you have achieved something that you want .       | نجاح         |
| <b>appreciate</b>      | To recognize the good qualities of somebody or something        | يقدر         |

## Expressions

|                                |                     |                               |                    |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>earn money</b>              | يكسب مال            | <b>apply for</b>              | يتقدم بطلب لـ      |
| <b>lose touch with</b>         | يفقد الاتصال مع ... | <b>send away</b>              | يطرد - يبعد        |
| <b>do an online course</b>     | يقوم بدوره على النت | <b>constructive criticism</b> | نقد بناء           |
| <b>pick yourself up</b>        | تستعيد ثقتك بنفسك   | <b>destructive criticism</b>  | نقد هدام           |
| <b>keep ... under control</b>  | يُبقى تحت السيطرة   | <b>wait for</b>               | ينتظر              |
| <b>carry on</b>                | يستمر               | <b>cope up with</b>           | يساير - يجاري      |
| <b>worried about</b>           | قلق بشأن            | <b>bring success</b>          | يجلب النجاح        |
| <b>believe in</b>              | يؤمن بـ / يثق في    | <b>a man of letters</b>       | اديب               |
| <b>advertise for a job</b>     | يعلن عن وظيفة       | <b>Educational process</b>    | عملية تعليمية      |
| <b>critical case</b>           | حالة حرجية          | <b>succeed in</b>             | ينجح في            |
| <b>spend no money</b>          | لا ينفق أى مال      | <b>feel lonely</b>            | يشعر بالوحدة       |
| <b>problem solvers</b>         | حلال مشاكل          | <b>flyover bridges</b>        | كباري علوية        |
| <b>run a school</b>            | يدير مدرسة          | <b>feel positively about</b>  | يشعر بشكل ايجابي   |
| <b>make ( become ) friends</b> | يكون صداقات         | <b>start a fire</b>           | يبدأ / يشعل حريق   |
| <b>according to</b>            | وفقا لـ - طبقا لـ   | <b>medical care</b>           | رعاية طبية         |
| <b>regard as</b>               | يعتبر كـ            | <b>fail her test</b>          | تفشل في اختبارها   |
| <b>make electricity</b>        | يصنع / ينتج كهرباء  | <b>lose her job</b>           | تخسر وظيفتها       |
| <b>build an engine</b>         | يصمم محرك           | <b>make a mistake</b>         | يرتكب خطأ          |
| <b>hurt others</b>             | يؤذي الآخرين        | <b>get a good education</b>   | يحصل على تعليم جيد |

## Synonyms &amp; Antonyms

| Word                      | Synonym                        | Antonym                              |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>own</b> يمتلك          | <b>possess / dominate</b>      | <b>lack / need</b>                   |
| <b>bully</b> يتنمر        | <b>threaten / hurt / force</b> | <b>help / aid / relieve / please</b> |
| <b>cruel</b> قاسي         | <b>brutal / savage</b>         | <b>merciful / compassionate</b>      |
| <b>increase</b> يزداد     | <b>grow / rise</b>             | <b>reduce / decrease</b>             |
| <b>servant</b> خادم       | <b>maid / footman</b>          | <b>master / mistress</b>             |
| <b>failure</b> فشل        | <b>decline / breakdown</b>     | <b>success / improvement</b>         |
| <b>expert</b> خبير        | <b>professional / master</b>   | <b>amateur / inexperienced</b>       |
| <b>apply</b> يطبق - يتقدم | <b>employ / practice / use</b> | <b>ignore / stop / deny</b>          |
| <b>earn</b> يكسب          | <b>score / collect / gain</b>  | <b>lose / miss / spend</b>           |

**Language Notes**

- 1- **A good education** تعليم جيد - **a well educated man** رجل متعلم  
 - **private education** تعليم خاص - **public education** تعليم عام

#####

- 2- **later** فيما بعد  
 see you later - later life - seven years later - later on - no later than  
 - **latter** الأخير / الثاني

There is **two important points**. The **latter point** is the most important  
**The first half of the year** finished , but **the latter half** of the year is more important.

- **lately** مؤخرًا (مضارع تام)  
 I haven't seem my friend Ali **lately**.  
 - **late** متأخر ( حال - صفه)  
 Ali came home **late** yesterday. His father was angry.

#####

- 3- **beat** يتغلب على شخص/فريق/يهزم ( **enemy** / **team** / **person** )  
 Our team **beat** the red team 2 -0.  
 - **win** يفوز / يكسب ( **a cup** / **a medal** / **a prize** / **a game** / **championship** / **election** / **race** )  
 - Brazil **won** the world cup six times.  
 - **gain** يكتسب شئ معنوي ( **information** / **experience** / **weight** / **fame** / **knowledge** / **speed** )  
 - Most actors **gain** a lot of **fake fame** as heros  
 - **earn** يكسب مالا مقابل عمل ( **money** / **his living** )  
 - Ali earns little momey . His family needs help.

#####

- 4- **Foreigner** ( أجنبي ) شخص من دولة أخرى  
 - He isn't from Egypt, he is **a foreigner**.  
 - **Foreign** ( أجنبي ) صفة لوصف البلاد / البضائع / اللغات  
 - Learning **foreign** languages is very important.  
 - **stranger** ( غريب ) شخص لا أعرفه  
 - I'm **a stranger** here, I don't know where the post office is.

#####

- 5- **Contact** ( يتصل ) لا تأخذ حرف جر  
 I will **contact you** later a contact with احتكاك ب  
 - **Communicate with** ( يتصل ب )  
 I **communicate with** my paents a lot when I'm out.

#####

- 6- **argue for** يؤيد / يناهز ل  
 - He **argued** strongly **for** the proposal.  
 - **argue against** يعارض / يقف ضد  
 - They **argued against** the new tax.

#####

- 7- **a job** وظيفة ( تجمع )  
 - My mother has **a lot of jobs** to do  
 - I will look **for a nice job** .  
 - **a career** حياة الفرد المهنية  
 - I enjoyed **my career** as a teacher .  
 - He wants **a career** in baking  
 - **profession** ( مهنة ) تحتاج مؤهلات  
 - Teaching is **a difficult profession**.  
 - **work** ( الشغل - مكان العمل ) ( اسم لا يعد )  
 - I have got a lot of **work** to do. - Mr Ahmed leaves **work** at two o'clock.

#####

- 8 - **An immediate solution** حل فوري **an urgent solution** حل عاجل **radical solution** حل جذري

## 9- Cope up with يساير

Egypt tries hard to **cope up with** the world changes .

- **Get on well with** ينسجم جيداً مع

We should **get on well** with our friends.

#####

## 10 - Keen on (ing)

- **keen to** (مصدر)

- He is **keen on** going out.

- I am **keen to work** hard.

#####

## 11- Save يوفر

- We should **save** energy.

- **save** ينقذ

- **safe** امن

- **safety**

- She **saved** the child from drowning.

#####

## 12 -Regard ----- as

يعتبر كـ

- I **regard solar energy** as the best type of energy

- **Regards** تحيات

- Send your father my **regards**.

#####

## 13- under control تحت السيطرة

- **out of control** خارج السيطرة

- The fire has become **under control**

- The infectious disease has become **out of control**

### LISTENING

Teacher: We don't know much about Jane's early school days, but I **imagine** she had gone to school before she moved to her aunt's house, as we know she could read. We also know that she was sent to **a boarding school** after she had **upset** Mrs Reed and her cousin John.

Omar: What's a boarding school?

Teacher: It's a school where children live as well as study. In the past, there were boarding schools for rich children and ones like Lowood House for children who weren't rich. And of course some rich children were taught at home. **Governesses**, like Jane, were employed to teach them.

Ali: My cousin, Kemal, had lessons at home.

Teacher: Did he, Ali? Why was that?

Ali: He had to stay at home for six months because he'd broken his **back** when the school term started. He wanted to go to school, but he'd already made lots of friends and they **came round** to see him, so it wasn't too bad.

Teacher: Did a teacher come to his house every day?

Ali: No. He was sent an email every day with the work that his friends were doing in school, but my aunt helped him when he couldn't understand it.

-----

Dareen: Dad, I don't want to **change** schools. I want to go to school with my friends.

Father: It's not so bad, Dareen. You know, my family used to travel, and I was taken to lots of different countries. So, I'd been to lot of different schools before we **came back** to Egypt. You can **make new friends** at a different school.

Dareen: I like my friends at my school now.

Father: It is easy to **keep in touch with** your friends. I always see you on your phone. I **lost touch with** the people I'd gone to school with.

Mother: If you don't change school, maybe you can do an online **course**. Some **extra** lessons will be helpful. Mona's mother said that Mona had had lots of problems in school before she started having extra lessons.



And they say some of these online courses are **fantastic**. They can understand what your **level** is and give you work that's just right for you. **In fact**, you were given a new computer to help you study.

Father: And you can chat with other students online, too. Just like you do at school.

Mother: Mona's mother says Mona has really improved with so much help from her online teachers.

Dareen: But, Mum, I learn a lot at school now. I only **failed** the test because I'd been ill when I took it.

Father: OK. OK. We'll leave things the way they are for now and then we can **discuss** it again after your exams **at the end of** the year.

Dareen: OK. Thank you.

-----  
Girl 1: I don't think that everyone needs to go to university. I fact I think it's **a waste of time** for some people.

Girl 2: **That's true**. If you know you want a job doing something **practical**, like being an **electrician**, or if you have a great idea for **a business**, why not start **immediately**?

Girl 1: Exactly.

Boy 1: I know in some countries, children start school really early, but I think three is too young. I mean, at that age all children want to do is play!

Boy 2: I'd say the opposite. The earlier you start the better. It will give you **a good start** in life.

Boy 3: They say that your school days are the best days of your life and I think that's probably true. It's not just about learning, it's also about making friends and **learning to help each other**.

Boy 4: You're right. My parents both loved school and made really good friends there.

Girl 3: If you're really ill, then it's great that there are ways of learning at home so that there isn't a break **in your education**. But, **otherwise**, you should go to school.

Girl 4: **I don't agree with you**. There are lots of **advantages** with learning at home. There isn't any bullying, for instance.

Girl 5: I don't think people understand how important education really is for young people. I mean, what kind of a future can you have **without a good education** these days?

Girl 6: A lot of people have good lives without doing well at school. I'm **completely against** this idea that education is **the only way to do** well.

### **READING**

#### **Jane Eyre**

Charlotte Brontë was born in England in 1816. She and her two sisters all became famous **authors**. Charlotte Brontë's most famous book is Jane Eyre . It was written in 1847.

Jane Eyre was an **orphan** who lived with her cousins and her **wealthy** aunt, Mrs Reed. The family was **unkind** and they did not want Jane to live with them. Jane was **sent away** to school. Jane was happy to go to Lowood School, but the **owner**, Mr Brocklehurst, was very **cruel**, so the students lived unhappy lives.

Finally, cruel Mr Brocklehurst was told to leave the school. Six years later, Jane became a teacher at Lowood School. After two years, Jane **decided to apply for a job as a governess**. Governesses were often **employed by rich families**. She started to teach **a young French girl called Adèle** at a big house called Thornfield Hall. The owner of the house was Mr Rochester. Jane enjoyed her new job and became friends with Mrs Fairfax, **the kind housekeeper**.

One night, there was a fire at Thornfield Hall. Jane saved Mr Rochester from the fire. He said that the fire was started by a servant called Grace, but Grace did not lose her job. Jane did not understand, but she thought that there was a secret in the house. Jane decided to leave Thornfield Hall, but she could not forget it.

Before Mrs Reed allowed Jane to leave the room, Jane had become ill. A doctor had visited Jane before and told Mrs Reed that it would be better if Jane went to live at a nearby school. The girls were cold at the school because the head teacher had spent no money to keep it warm. After Jane had advertised for a job in a newspaper, she received a reply.

### STEM SUBJECTS

Science, technology, engineering and maths were taught in schools long before the invention of the internet. However, we now live in a time when these subjects are more important than ever. This does not mean that music, history, languages and other subjects are not important.

However, understanding the so-called STEM subjects can be an important bridge to a good job in the future. Many businesses do not have enough people with knowledge of the STEM subjects. For that reason, they are keen to give jobs to young people with these skills.

In the past, STEM subjects were often seen as difficult. To change this idea, many businesses now run open days at which students can try building car engines, using a bike to make electricity, or playing computer games to practise maths.

Schools, too, are helping students to realise that these subjects can be both interesting and fun for boys and girls of all abilities. Schools might not have the equipment to build engines, but many now use different experiments and computers so that students can learn by doing things, and not just by reading a text. This also helps with critical thinking skills which students can use in other subjects.

It is said that 80% of jobs in the future will need students to have skills in the STEM subjects. Of course we will also need artists, musicians, language teachers and other experts, but skills in STEM subjects will help students to become the problem solvers and inventors of the future.

### Work-book Texts

Karim: My name is Karim and I love to read. I had read another one of Charlotte Brontë's books called Villette before I decided to buy a copy of Jane Eyre. They didn't have it in my local bookshop, so I kept going back to check. Finally, I saw it on the shelf but then an old man took it. I spoke to the owner of the bookshop and I explained that I had waited three weeks for the book to arrive. He said there was nothing he could do, but then I heard someone laughing. The old man said he had lost his copy of the book many years ago, before I was born, so he didn't mind waiting a little longer. He let me buy it and when I got home, I knew I had been very lucky.

Speaker 1: I mean, it can't be good for your confidence, can it? It's got to get you down.

Speaker 2: It was the best thing that ever happened to me. Everything had been a bit too easy for me before, so I wasn't ready for it. But then I had to make some real effort.

Speaker 3: I hated it but, after feeling sorry for myself for a while, I could see my mistakes and I knew what I had to do.

Speaker 4: My friends were lovely, but I just felt terrible and I kept on feeling terrible. In fact, haven't tried it again because it upset me too much.

Speaker 5: When you've made as many mistakes as me, you learn to pick yourself up and carry on.

**Dear Ellen,**

I told you some time ago that I wanted to get a good job. I am **glad** to say that I have found one as governess and I am **quite happy**. The house is not very **large** but it is very comfortable and the gardens are **huge**. Although I **earn less money** than in my **previous** job, I am working with kind, **friendly people**. I have two pupils: an eight-year-old girl and a six-year-old boy. My job as a governess can be very difficult because children have so **much energy**. I just hope I will not become ill trying to keep them under **control and make them happy**. Well, I must **continue** with my work. I hope to see you soon. Kind **regards**, Charlotte

### **Failure is necessary**

People say that it is **impossible** to **succeed** without **failure** and even the most **successful** people **make mistakes**. **As well as this**, many people believe in the **importance** of learning from your mistakes.

Sometimes failure can make people work harder and do things better. **As a consequence**, they **appreciate success** more because it hasn't been easy for them. **For instance**, when football players lose a match, they are **sad** but they learn how to **improve** and do better next time.

On the other hand, success can make you **feel positively about** what you are doing and it can give you a reason to keep trying. **In addition**, many people **prefer to forget** their mistakes so they can have **good memories** about the past.

**In conclusion**, although it is **possible** to have success without failure, from my **point of view**, it is better **to fail** sometimes **in order to appreciate** success more.

### **Video Script**

Most **young people** go to school **every day** and have lessons with other children, but not everyone does this. In some countries, students can learn at home **instead** and their teachers are usually their parents. We call this way of learning 'home-schooling'. **Home-schooling** is useful for young people who live **a long way from** a school, and it's becoming more popular today because students can easily use computers to learn **wherever** they are. Home-schooling is also useful for students who are sick and cannot go to a school every day. A good thing about home-schooling is that children can learn at a time and in a place that's best for them, **rather than** following a school timetable. But, on the other hand, home-schooling isn't **right for** everyone. Home-schooled children might **feel lonely** because it can be **harder for** them to make friends. They may not be able to **do sports** with other young people either.

### **Exercises on unit : 9 (Voc.)**

#### **1 Choose two correct answers out of the five options given:**

- Don't be cruel to animals. **Cruel** is similar in meaning to.....  
a. tolerant      b. harsh      c. cooperative      d. effective      e) severe
- The child jumped into the shallow water. The antonym of **shallow** is .....  
a. deep      b. airy      c. rocky      d. frozen      c. profound
- There's a clear increase in the number of successful students. The word '**increase**' in this sentence is the synonym of.....  
a.grew      b.growth      c.decrease      d . reduced      e.develop
- The synonyms of **servant** are.....  
a.master      b.attendant      c.maid      d . mistress      e.owner
- We all look for success. The synonym of **success** is.....and.....  
a. victory      b. failure      c. triumph      d . advantage      e.demerit

**1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. The teacher asked us to write a ( plot – conflict – summary – verse ) of the story we read
2. We had a fruitful ( argument – decision – dispute – discussion ) on the new novel.
- 3- As a- an ( orphan- alive- modest- poor ) , Jane lived with her cousins and her wealthy aunt.
- 4- The word **cruel** is the synonym of the word ( kind- generous- cruelty- cruel)
- 5- If the parents are very ( cruel – delighted- clever- serious) so their children live unhappy lives.
- 6.( Beggars -Governesses -Governors -Maids) were often employed by rich families to teach their children.
7. I helped a student ( is called- calling- called- calls) Ali to complete his studies as he was very poor.
8. The ( owner- tenant- lender- leader) of the house is a rich kind man and I enjoy working in his house.
9. A ( governess- worker- servant- chemist) is a woman who teaches children in their home
10. An ( oculist- orphan- educated- employer) is a child whose parents are dead .
11. The company ( agreed – disagreed – objected – praised ) strongly on our opinion. They all opposed it.
12. My brother applied ( for – in – with – to ) a new job in a bank. He is going to be interviewed soon.
13. We ( reply - improve - appreciate – check) that caring for children is an important job.
- 14- Skills in STEM subjects will help students to become the problem ( employers- employees- solvers- senders) and inventors .
15. There are many writers who ( supposed – supported – opposed – denied ) and advocated women's rights.
- 16- The secondary school in our town ( allows - offers - employs – develops) more than a hundred teachers.
- 17- Students can learn by doing things and ( collecting- having- inventing- making ) mistakes .
18. She found a new ( work – employ – employment – employer ) as a governess.
19. Her new ( job – employee – employment – employer ) is very kind and treats her well.
20. He is a young ( employee- employ- employment- employer ) and he looks forward to a promotion.
21. He is a / an ( orphan- alive- modest- poor ). He misses his dead parents very much
22. As a / an ( expert - housekeeper - author – orphan) , she is responsible for looking after the whole house
23. The ( increase- decrease- variety- decline) in the number of students in a class makes it difficult for the teacher to control them.
24. Unfortunately, the writer's first three novels were not a ( failure- successful- success- publisher).
25. What we say here in this room is a / an ( disappeared - hidden - public – secret). Never tell anyone about it.
- 26- The firefighter ( kept- saved- sent- took) the young girl from the fire, but her mother died.
- 27- I don't like to work as a civil ( maid- servant- worker- housekeeper). I want to work for myself .
- 28- Understanding the ( so called- so calling- too called- called) STEM subjects can be an important bridge to a good job .
29. Our school is provided with a laboratory which has all the latest ( machines- equipment- tools- hammers)

30. Only the wise can avoid ( doing- repeating-correcting-supporting ) the mistakes of the past.
31. ( Boarding schools - Kindergartens - STEM Schools – Cradles) care about education for development, training and application.
32. Zamalik ( show- train-qualify- run) daily to be ready for the beginning of the season.
33. ( Inventions - Ambitions - Applications – Advertisements)encourage customers to buy more products.
34. Because of his bad behaviour, he ( missed – lost – got – employed ) his job and was fired.
35. He could have good ( work – job – employment – profession ) in a respected company .
36. I asked him to keep the news as a ( scary – sacred – secret – scared ) but he told all our friends.
37. You should be crowned with ( hatred – honesty – betrayal – tender ) in your dealings with others.
38. It is not easy to live in a house with ( other – another – others – authors ) family.
39. Which of his talk ( the most – best – the best – better ) explains his point of view?
40. We all know the ( introduction – inclusion – importance – employment ) of having a lot of money in this world.
- 41-The housekeeper is responsible ( to -for-about-from) the whole house '
42. Success always make people work harder and ( give- have-do-make) things better.
- 43-As a consequence, the successful people ( appreciate -estimate -calculate -puctuate) success more because it hasn't been easy for them.
44. The successful people learn how to ( prove- improve- proof- delinea) and do better next time.
- 45-People say that it is impossible to (succeed – fail- begin-discuss) without hard work.
- 46- In ( conclusion -reason - cause -seunce) , it is possible to have success without failure , but we will suffer a lot.
47. I've been busy at home and have hardly had any ( communicate- contact- link- connect) with the outside world.
48. I'd like to thank my parents for all of their love and ( report- support-advise- consult) over the years.
49. You shouldn't have told people about my illness. You just can't keep a-an ( invitation- mystery- truth- secret) .
50. You suffers severly. You should visit your doctor and ( send- give- refuse- seek) his advice.
51. Medical ( experts - experience - experienced – expertise) agree that this medicine can prevent deaths from cancer.
51. You can ask her for advice. She's a good problem ( maker- creator- inventor- solver) .
- 52.Mr and Mrs Osman employed ( governess –housekeeper-nurse –baker) to teach their children at home.
- 53.That bully was very ( foreign- strange-cruel- kind) to the smaller boys, so they told a teacher about it.
54. I can't stand people who are ( decent- strange-cruel- helpful) to animals.
55. A ( governess- servant- keeper- guard) is a person who works for people in their house cooking and cleaning .
- 56-A ( primary -preparatory -high –boarding) school is a place where children live and study .
- 57-You should keep (in touch- in lose- in miss- ina hurry) with your friends.
- 58- The success or ( depression- pressure- succession- failure) of the plan depends on you.

59. For that reason, they are keen (on-to- for- about) give jobs to young people with these skills.
- 60-What is the weather ( so- such- like-as ) today .
61. From my point of ( review-view- presentation- scene ), **Zamalik** is one of the cleanest things in Egypt.
62. There are some people who we love and ( dare- care-prepare-attend) about them.
63. Wafaa was so shy that she found it difficult to (obtain-do- make-detain) friends at school.
64. He is ( exciting-interesting- keen- cray) to learn more about folk music.
65. This ( honest- so called-thief- kind) charity has robbed thousands of poor people of their money.
66. Learning at home today doesn't help students ( make – teach – educate – get ) a good education.
67. She is ( doing – having – taking – owing ) problems dealing with other students in her new school.
68. You should ( spend – keep – remember – cope ) in touch with your friends while you are abroad.
69. Aya felt grieved when she ( passed – succeeded – failed – failure ) her final exams.
70. The course she had ( made – done – sent – took ) online was very useful in her work career.
71. She refused the job she was ( taken – done – made – offered ).
72. She was born into a wealthy family and was well ( educated – bring up- sent – helped ).
73. She was born into a wealthy family and received a good ( educated – education – educating – educational ).
74. His new employment is very profitable. He ( earns – gains – wins – make ) a lot of money out of it.
75. An (eight-year – eight-years – eight-year's – eight-years' ) -old girl won the drawing competition.
76. I'm looking for a job which will enable me to develop my ( skulls- skills- proofs- proves)
78. Most Gulf countries' ( health- wealth-pounds- silver) comes from oil.
79. Maha left the dirty dishes for the ( governess- servant- keeper- guard) and went to work.
80. I hope you spend more time at home (instead-install- instill-alternative) of going out every night.
81. From an economic point of ( review-view- presentation- scene ), the new project will benefit the town greatly.
82. Well, I'm going out for the evening, keep the kids ( out- under- below- away) your control!
83. A judge's job is to ( apply- rely-cry-supply) the law, not to make new laws.
84. When you move to a new city, it can be hard to ( do-lose- miss -make ) friends
- 85- The ( increase-reduce-decline-decrease) in cars and other means of transport leads to lack of petrol.
- 86- You should feel ( negative -positive -passive –disappointed ) .You are excellent at all subjects.
87. You should ( make – do – take – have ) a good reason for supporting her suggestion.
88. Although they are twins, they are very ( differentiate – differ – duffer – different ) in personality.
89. He is a famous ( reader – authorized – author – router ) . He writes great works.
90. A good education always brings success in a student's ( late – latter – lately – later ) life.



91. Many of the staff in our school who ( learn – teach – mention – take ) English are not qualified.
- 92- The government should put an end to the problem of (polishing- bullying-faking- suffering) at schools.
- 93-Some students hate school because other students are ( respectful- decent-modest-bullies)
94. STEM subjects can be an important ( mean – draw bridge – bridge – ways ) to a good job.
95. This course suits students of all ( ability – disabilities – abilities – capable ).



## Grammar

### THE PAST SIMPLE TENSE

### الماضي البسيط

- 1- يعبر الماضي البسيط عن حدث انتهى في الماضي في وقت محدد
- She **visited** London in 2010.      - I **was** in Alexandria a month ago.
- 2- يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدثين متتابعين في الماضي.
- When he **had** an idea, he **wrote** a short story.
- I **went** to the park and **met** my friends.
- 3- يعبر عن عادة في الماضي و غير مستمرة الآن.
- I **played** tennis every day **when I was** younger.
- I **always ate** breakfast before I **went** to school.
- She **cooked** lunch **every day last week**.
- 4- يعبر عن الحقائق الماضية وعن الافعال المنتهية (الموتى) وعن الحدث الثاني :
- Shakspeare **wrote** Hamlet      - Colombus **discovered** America.
- ملحوظة هامة : نستخدم الماضي البسيط وليس الماضي المستمر إذا كان الفعل يعبر عن حالة (be).
- I **saw** Ali **while** he **was** at the sports club.      (NOT: was being)
- 5- يعبر عن سرد الاحداث في الماضي مع : first, then, next, at last, finally, ..... :
- Ali **found** a bag ,then he **went** to the police station.
- 6- يستخدم لوصف حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي ولكنه غير موجود الآن
- She **lived** in Tokyo for seven years.
- They **were** in London from Monday to Thursday of last week.
- 7- في الحالة الثانية من (If) الشرطية.
- If he **helped** us, we **would** win.
- 8- يستخدم مع التعبيرات الآتية ليعبر عن أحداث مستبعدة أو مستحيلة الحدوث في المضارع أو المستقبل.
- 1- I **wish** + فاعل + ماضي بسيط
- I **wish** mum **wasn't** ill.      - I **wish** the Egyptian team **played** well.
- 2- It's **time** + فاعل + ماضي بسيط
- It's **time** he **paid** the bill.      - It **is** time father **arrived**.
- 2- I 'd **rather** + فاعل + ماضي بسيط
- I **would** rather she **helped** him.      - I 'd **rather** Ali **didn't** come.
- يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع الكلمات الآتية:
- yesterday - ago - last.... - in the past - once / once upon a time      one day - in
- 2007 – from + سنة + to + سنة – When I was.....
- How long ago = When - for
- I last ate fish when I was in Alex.

♣ ويتكون من ( was / were + pp ) في المبني للمجهول

- A new school was built in the village last year.
- Naguib Mahfouz was awarded the Noble Prize for literature in 1988
- Jane Eyre was sent to live at Lowood School.
- A brave young man was saved the old man from the fire.
- Ahmed was told not to arrive late.

~~~~~

❖ تستخدم للتعبير عن التناقض بين العادات أو المواقف في الماضي و الحاضر :

- ### ١٠ وفي حالة النفي نستخدم:

- ### في حالة السؤال نستخدم:

- لا تستخدم no longer بدلا من used to** ويأتي بعدها الفعل في المضارع البسيط:

- كـ تستخدم any more / any longer بدلا من used to مع نفى الفعل في المضارع البسيط و تأتي في نهاية الجملة:**

- used to = It was my habit to ..... / I was in / got the habit of .....**

- كما يمكن التعبير عن عادة في الماضي باستخدام (was / were used to v.ing).

- I **was used to eating** breakfast before I **went** to school.

24- My last e-mail (send - was sending -has sent -was sent) to six of my friends

- 25- She (writes - has written - wrote - will write) poetry for 7 years, but now she writes novels.
- 26- When she (is - was - was being - has been) seven, she wrote a poem which won a prize.
- 27- This film (directed - had directed - was directed - was directing) by Thomas Wilson.
- 28- He ( didn't use to - isn't used to - used to - uses to) need much sleep, but he does now
- 29- Our block of flats (was built - build - has been built - was building) five years ago.
- 30- I (was starting - have started - am starting - started) this school in 2016.
- 31- When I was younger, I used (to play - play - playing - played) tennis with my friend
- 32- He used to be a driver but nowadays he ( doesn't - wasn't - isn't - didn't ).
- 33- At six o'clock yesterday evening, I (was watching - am watching - have been watching - watch) TV.
- 34- Jane Eyre ( sends - sent - was sent - has sent ) to live at Lowood School.
- 45 A brave man ( saved - was saved - saves - is saving ) a boy from the fire yesterday.
- 46- Ahmed ( was told - told - had told - was telling ) not to arrive late.
- 47- Unluckily, my car ( repaired - is repaired - didn't repair - wasn't repaired ) yesterday.
- 48- Adele ( is teaching - teaches - was taught - taught ) by Jane Eyre
- 49- First, I ( revised - had revised - was revising - revises ) the lesson. Then, I did the exercise.
- 50- I ( allowed - wasn't allowed - allows - didn't allowed ) to leave until I had finished my work.

~~~~~

### Past Perfect Tense زمن الماضي التام

#### Form:

had + p.p.

التكوين

- يتكون الماضي التام من

- We washed the dishes after we **had eaten** supper.

#### Usage:

#### الاستخدام

يستخدم الماضي التام ليصف حدث وقع قبل حدث آخر في الماضي.

- When I met Ali yesterday, I remembered that we **had met** before, about ten years ago.
- When I got home, my wife **had cooked** the dinner.
- I **hadn't flown** before, so I was nervous about getting on the plane.

يستخدم الماضي التام في الكلام غير المباشر لنقل أشياء حدثت بالفعل عندما كنت تتحدث عنها.

- I **told** him that I **had weighed** the soil.
- She **said** she **had heard** it all before.

يستخدم الماضي التام مع الكلمات الآتية:

حتى / until / حتى / till / عندما / when / بمجرد أن / as soon as / بعد / after  
 لم يكده... حتى / no sooner....than / قبل / by the time / قبل / before  
 لم يكده...حتى / hardly (scarcely).....when

ادوات الربط كالتالي

#### Study well

ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام past simple + ماضي تام past perfect + فاعل + 1- After (A)

After he **had done** his homework, he **watched** television.

2- After + v. + ing + past simple ماضي بسيط

After **doing** his homework, he **watched** television.

3- Having + p.p. + past simple ماضي بسيط

Having **done** his homework, he **watched** television.

4. V+ing ( حدث اول ) ماضي تام + past simple ماضي بسيط

Doing the shopping , she **returned** home

### 5- ماضى بسيط past simple + ماضى تام past perfect + فاعل + As soon as

He **parked** his car **as soon as** he **had found** a place.

### 6. ماضى بسيط past simple + ماضى تام past perfect + فاعل + When

When I **had finished** the answer, I **gave** my paper to my teacher

### 7. By + ماضى تام past perfect + مده في الماضي

**By 2010** , Ali **had got** a new job in a factory.

### (B) 1- ماضى تام past perfect + ماضى بسيط past simple + فاعل + Before + بدون فاعل + v. + ing + ماضى تام past perfect

Before he **parked** his, he **had found** a place.

Before **parking** his car, he **had found** a place.

### 2 - ماضى تام past perfect + ماضى بسيط past simple + فاعل + By the time

**By the time** the police **arrived** the thief **had escaped**.

### 3- ماضى تام past perfect + ماضى بسيط past simple + فاعل + When

**When** he **had read** the novel, he **watched** TV.

خلي بالك

**When** he **watched** TV, he **had read** the novel.

لاحظ الفرق فى المعنى بين هاتين الجملتين:

- **When I arrived** at the station, the train **left**.  
= I arrived, then the train left.
- **When I arrived** at the station, the train **had left**.  
= The train left before I arrived.

خلي بالك

### - After (As soon as) (when) (Before)

إذا جاء معهم ثلاثة أحداث يكون اثنان ماضى بسيط وواحد فقط ماضى تام ولا يوجد ترتيب كالتالى

**When I arrived** at the station I **found** that the train **had left** the station.

= **On arriving** at the station I **found** that the train **had left** the station

**As soon as / after I saw** Ahmed, I **realized** that I **had forgotten** his book at home.

**As soon as** He **reached** the airport, Ali **found** out that he **had left** his suitcases at home.

**After I heard** that I **had passed** the exam, I **phoned** my dad.

خلي بالك

### - ماضى بسيط past simple + ماضى تام past perfect + ماضى تام past perfect

**Before = after that + past simple**

I **watched** the film but **before that** I **had done** my homework.

I **had had** a shower **after that** I **went** out.

خلي بالك

( **On** اسم ) or ( **v + ing** ) ( ماضى بسيط ) ,

- **On finishing** work, I **left** the office.

- The moment **ماضى بسيط** + **ماضى تام**

The moment I **had finished** work, I **left** the office.

خلي بالك

نستخدم هذه التركيبة عندما لا يكون هناك فارق زمني بين الحدثين

**After / as soon as / when** ماضى بسيط + ماضى بسيط

- When she **saw** a snake in front of her, she **cried**.

- He **told** me as soon as he **heard** the news.

- After he **paid** the driver, he **got out** of the taxi.

### (c) 1. ماضى تام + until / till + المصدر ماضى بسيط غالبا منفى ( المصدر + didn't )

He **didn't park** his car until he **had found** a place.

### 2. ماضى تام + wasn't / weren't + p.p until – till + الفاعل

Ali **wasn't invited** to the party **until** he **had met** the bridegroom.

3. ماضى تام + **until – till** + المصدر + **couldn't / wouldn't** + الفاعل

I **wouldn't leave** the office **until** I **had finished** my work.

4. ماضى تام + **until – till** + الفعل ماضى بسيط مثبت

**No one left** the office **until** they **had finished** all tasks.

5- ماضى تام + **until – till** + او اي كلمه تدل على النفي (**refused/denied**)

She **refused to marry** him **until** he **had bought** a new flat.

6. ماضى تام + **until – till** + صفة / اسم + **wasn't / weren't** + الفاعل

He **wasn't strong** **until** he **had trained** in a gym.

خلي بالك

7. .... + فاعل + مصدر + **did** + ماضى تام + **Not until + past perfect**

**Not until** he **had found** a place , **did he park** his car.

8- ماضى بسيط + **that** + ماضى تام + **It wasn't until + past perfect**

**It wasn't until** he **had found** a place **that** he **parked** his car.

9- ماضى بسيط + **past simple** + **that** + فاعل + ماضى تام + **It was only when**

**It was only when** he **had read** the novel **that** he **watched** TV.

لاحظ :- أحيانا يستخدم الماضى التام بعد **because** بشرط أن تكون الجملة في الماضى والحدث بعد **because** هو الذي حدث أولا:

1. ماضى تام + **because** + ماضى بسيط

Leila **was** late for school **because** the bus **had broken** down.

He **was** angry **because** she **had insulted** him.

لاحظ :- يستخدم الماضى التام مع الكلمات الدالة على المضارع التام إذا كان في الجملة فعل ثانى زمنه ماضى بسيط:

**for / ever / never / already / yet / just**

The film **had already started** when I arrived.

لاحظ استخدام **no sooner/hardly /scarcely** بين **had** و التصريف الثالث (pp)

**no sooner** **than**

ماضى بسيط + **past simple** + **when** + p.p. + **hardly** + فاعل 1. (D)

**scarcely** **when**

He **had no sooner gone** shopping **than it started** to rain.

He **had hardly gone** shopping **when it started** to rain.

إذا بدأت الجملة بـ **no sooner/hardly/scarcely** نضع الجملة الأولى فى صيغة استفهام.

2. **No sooner** **than**

ماضى بسيط + **past simple** + **when** + p.p. + فاعل + **had** + **Hardly**

**Scarcely** **when**

- **No sooner had they finished** painting our new house **than** we moved into it.

- **Hardly had they finished** painting our new house **when** we moved into it.

لا بد من استخدام الماضى التام إذا كان ذلك يؤثر على معنى الجملة.

- He **thanked** me for what I **had done**.

- He **found** the bag, which he **had lost**.

- He **was** tired **because** he **had worked** for 14 hours.

**Choose the correct answer: ( جمل سهله لاختيار القاعده بسره )**

- 1- I had done my homework ..... I slept.  
a. after                                      b. before                                      c. as soon as                                      d. while
- 2- ..... I had done my homework, I slept.  
a. After                                      b. Before                                      c. As soon as                                      d. On
3. 1. I didn't write to my friend until I .....his letter.  
a.have received                                      b. had received                                      c. will receive                                      d. was received
- 4- ..... attending the teachers' forum , Mr.Hany left Cairo .  
a. After                                      b. Before                                      c.As soon as                                      d. During
- 5- .....sleeping , I had done my homework.  
a. After                                      b. Before                                      c. As soon as                                      d. While
6. I had studied for three hours before ..... to bed.  
a. going                                      b. been gone                                      b. gone                                      d. go
- 7- The book ..... until the writer had revised it.  
a. published                                      b. wasn't published                                      c.didn't publish                                      d. will publish
- 8- ..... midnight, I had reurned home.  
a. By                                      b. After                                      c. On                                      d. At
- 9- ..... midnight, I returned home.  
a. By                                      b. After                                      c. On                                      d. At
- 10- ..... they got home; my wife had already slept.  
a. Before the time                                      b. As soon as                                      c. By the time                                      d. Having
- 11- She went to bed early because she ..... for a long time.  
a. had played                                      b. has played                                      c. was playing                                      d. would play
- 12- I had no sooner met my friend ..... I gave him the invition card.  
a. when                                      b. that                                      c. than                                      d. then
- 13- Hardly ..... ny friend when I gave him the invitation card.  
a. I had met                                      b. had I met                                      c. I met                                      d. have I met
- 14- She ..... the homework before her sleep.  
a. does                                      b. doing                                      c. has already done                                      d. had already done
- 15- By 2017, the young author ..... three novels. It was a great achievement for him.  
a. had published                                      b. will publish                                      c. has published                                      d. was publishing
- 16- The young author ..... three novels. It is a great achievement for him.  
a. had published                                      b. will publish                                      c. has published                                      d. was publishing
- 17- We arrived half an hour late. The film ..... half an hour earlier.  
a. began                                      b. was beginning                                      c. had begun                                      d.has begun
- 18- After the house ..... painted, we furnished it.  
a. had                                      b. had been                                      c. has been                                      d. is
- 20- Mona didn't give the sheet to the teacher until she ..... it.  
a. has been checking                                      b. has checked                                      c. had checked                                      d. checking

**Choose the correct answer:**

- 1-I didn't write to my friend until I (have received-had received-will receive-was received) his letter.
- 2-We (have had-had-had been having-had had) that car for ten years before it broke down.
- 3-When she went home she found that she (buy-has bought-had bought-would buy) the wrong book.
- 4-We (had played-has played-were playing-had been playing) tennis for only a few minutes when it started raining.
- 5-The secretary left the office after (type-had typed-typed-typing) all the letters.



6-Hardly (he had heard-has he heard-had he heard-does he hear) the bad news when he got depressed.

7-It (had been snowing-had snowed-snowed-has snowed) for a while before we left.

8-I (have-has-had-was) already left the house when it began to rain.

9-They had no sooner left the house (when-what-then-than) it started to rain.

10-There were floods because it (had been raining-has been raining-was raining-rains) for three days.

11-By the time Alex finished his studies, he (was-had been-has been-is) in London for over 8 years.

12-When I went to my friend's flat, she (already left-has already left-had already left-left) for school.

13-Last year, I spent a month in France. I (dream-had dreamt-has dreamt-was dreaming) of going there since I was a child.

14-Leila and her husband (move-have moved-moved-had been moving) into their own flat last weekend. Before that they had lived with Leila's parents.

15-My father retired last week. He (worked-has worked-has been working-had worked) for the same company all his life.

16-Karim fell asleep during the football match because he (had gone-has gone-was going-is going) to bed late the night before.

17-The fish was fresh when I (bought-had bought-was buying-have bought) it.

18-Ali ate a sandwich during the game because he (wasn't having-had not had-doesn't have-won't have) enough time to eat before it started.

19-The doctor said that the patient (dies-died-had died-was dying) a few minutes before.

20-Hassan (borrows-has borrowed-borrowed-was borrowing) money from Ali because he had left his money at home.

21-Adel asked which team was red because he (doesn't see-hasn't seen-can't see-had not seen) these teams before.

22-I did not have any money because I (had lost-have lost-lost-lose) my wallet.

23-Hany (has looked-was looking-had been looking-looks) for work for over a year before he got a job.

24-The little children's clothes (are-have been-were being-were) dirty because they had been playing in the park all day.

25-He (had been driving-was driving-drives-to drive) for only 3 weeks, so it is not surprising that he failed his driving test.

26-I went to the doctor's yesterday evening because I (have been feeling-was feeling-had been feeling-feel) ill for nearly a week.

27-When I got home, I was very tired. I (have been working-work-had been working-have worked) all day.

29-After I (finish-have finished-had been finishing-had finished) my homework, I watched my favourite TV programme.

30-She (worked-has been working-had worked-had been working) at that company for three years when it went out of business.

31-There were floods because it (had been raining – has been raining – was raining – rains) for three days.

32-By the time he was 12, my brother (learnt – had learnt – has learnt – learns) 3 languages.

33-Jack knew Steve was at the match because Steve (had phoned – phones – was phoning – would phone) him before he went.

34-By the time she (finishes - finished – has finished – was finishing) writing her report, she had drunk six cups of tea.

35-The little children's clothes (are – have been – were being – were) dirty because they had been playing in the park all day.

36-He (had been driving – was driving – drives – to drive) for only 3 weeks, so it is not surprising that he failed his driving test.

37-When I got home, I was very tired. I (have been working – work – had been working – have worked) all day.

38-The town was flooded. It (has rained – had been raining – has been raining – rains) for 3 days.

39-After I (finish – have finished – had been finishing – had finished) my homework, I watched my favourite TV programme.

40-Before (wrote – writing – had written – has written) this novel, he had become famous as a playwright.

41- When she went out to play, she..... her homework.

a) had already done      b) has already done      c) was already doing      d) does

42- My brother ate all of the cake that our mum .....

a) will make      b) has made      c) had made      d) used to make

43-The doctor took off the plaster that he ..... on six weeks before.

a) puts      b) had put      c) is putting      d) has put

44-he waiter ..... a drink that I had ordered.

a) had brought      b) was bringing      c) will bring      d) brought

45-.....he phone Dalia before he went to see her in London?

a) Did      b) Had      c) Has      d) Can

46-No sooner .....the sun risen than the fog disappeared.

a) has      b) had      c) did      d) does

47-Did you ..... write poems when you were young?

a) use to      b) used to      c) used      d) get used to

48-When she went back to school, she found she .... the wrong composition the day before

a) wrote      b) had written      c) has written      d) had been written

49-She ..... a magazine when suddenly somebody knocked at the door.

a) read      b) reads      c) was reading      d) had read

50- They couldn't go swimming because they ..... their swimsuits.

a) forget      b) have forgotten      c) had forgotten      d) will forget

51-Before ..... for London, he had paid off his debts.

a) leaving      b) left      c) had left      d) leave

52 Hany couldn't answer the phone because he ..... a shower.

a) had      b) was having      c) had      d) had had

53-By the time he reached the bus stop, the bus .....

a) leave      b) leaves      c) will leave      d) had left

54-.....seeing the accident, the motorists drove more carefully.

a) On      b) Without      c) Despite      d) Over

55-No sooner ..... he see the police than he ran away.

a) do      b) does      c) had      d) did

- 56-I..... my own computer for three years before anything went wrong with it.  
 a) had had      b) have had      c) had      d) have
- 57-Fawzi .....already read some of Yehia Haqq's writing before learning about him in class.  
 a) have      b) had      c) is      d) was
58. Mr Ali was shocked when he joined our company as he .....to do much work every day.  
 a) wasn't used      b) didn't use      c) used      d) was used
- 59-As soon as the criminal ....., he was sent to prison .  
 a) arrested      b) has been arrested      c) had been arrested      d) was being arrested
- 60-Did you go out last night or .....you busy ?  
 a) did      b) were      c) have      d) are
- 61-Crossing the street , he .....on the ice and broke his arm.  
 a) was slipping      b) slipped      c) had slipped      d) was slipped
- 62-We were sitting in the garden when it suddenly .....to rain.  
 a) was starting      b) started      c) had started      d) has started
- 63- Did you hear what she said ? - No, I .....about something else.  
 a) thought      b) was thinking      c) have thought      d. think
- 64-Sorry for being late . The car .....down on my way here.  
 a) was breaking      b) has broken      c) was broken      d) used to break
- 65-When it was lunchtime , I didn't eat much . I .....a big breakfast .  
 a) was having      b) have had      c) had had      d) will be having
- 28-The town was flooded. It (has rained-had been raining-has been raining-rains) for 3 days.  
 66- I ----- for two hours before the light went out.  
 a) studied      b) was studying      c) had studied      d) had been studying m
- 67- As soon as I arrived home , I realised that I ----- my keys.  
 a) had been losing      b) have lost      c) was losing      d) had lost.
- 68- Hardly ----- written the report when she handed it to me.  
 a) she had      b) did she      c) had she      d) she has
- 69- My friend ----- to give me the mobile until he had watched the video.  
 a) didn't      b) refused      c) wasn't      d) won't
- 70- After I ----- my friend I realised that I forgot to give him the address.  
 a) will invite      b) invite      c) have invited      d) had invited.
- 71- His clothe were dirty because he ----- his car by himself.  
 a) has mended      b) had been mending      c) has been mending      d) is mending.
- 72- I met Sally yesterday. I ----- her since she left our village.  
 a) didn't see      b) haven't seen      c) hadn't seen      d) won't see
- 73- It wasn't ( when - until - after - before ) he had arrived that the light went out.  
 74- she had been sleeping all day before my mother ----- her.  
 a) awoke      b) had awoken      c) awakes      d) has awoken
- 75- ( On - In - By - At ) 6:00 pm yesterday , I had done many jobs at home.

## Skills

### Choose the best translation

#### 1- تذل الحكومة ما فى وسعها لرفع مستوى معيشة الفرد

- 1.The government do its best to raise the individuals' standard of living.
- 2.The government does its best to raise the individuals' standard of living.
- 3.The government does its best for raise the individuals' standard of living.
- 4.The government does its best to raise the individuals' standards of living.

### ٢- لقد أصبحت مياه الشرب مشكلة عالمية يمكن أن تؤدي إلى حروب بين كثير من الدول.

1. Drinking water have become a global problem that could lead to wars between many countries.
2. Drinking water has become a global problem that could not lead to wars between many countries.
3. Drinking water has become a global problem that could lead to wars between many countries.
4. Drinking water has become a global problem that could lead to wars between much countries.

### 3 إن حسن استغلال مواردنا المائية هو هدف قومي يجب أن يتعاون الجميع من أجل تطبيقه.

1. The good use of our water resources is a international goal which everyone must cooperate to apply.
2. The good use of our water resources are a national goal which everyone must cooperate to apply.
3. The good use of our water sources is a national goal which everyone must cooperate to apply.
4. The good use of our water resources is a national goal which everyone must cooperate to apply.

### 4 تعتبر مصر واحة للامان الذي يعد الركيزة الاساسية للاستقرار الاقتصادي والاجتماعي.

1. Egypt is an oasis of safe, which is the mainstay of the economic and social stability.
2. Egypt is an oasis of safety, which is the mainstay of the economy and social stability.
3. Egypt is an oasis of safety, which is the mainstay of the economic and social stability.
4. Egypt are an oasis of safety, which is the mainstay of the economic and social stability.

### Choose the best translation

### 1. Thanks to modern inventions, life has become easy. One can go from one place to another in a car, by train or by plane. Modern means of transport have made it possible to enjoy travel.

١. لقد أصبحت الحياة صعبة بفضل الاختراعات الحديثة لان المرء يمكنه الان أن ينتقل من مكان لآخر بالسيارة أو بالقطار أو بالطائرة فوسائل النقل الحديثة جعلت من الممكن الاستمتاع بالسفر..
٢. لقد أصبحت الحياة افضل بفضل الاختراعات الحديثة لان المرء لا يمكنه الان أن ينتقل من مكان لآخر بالسيارة أو بالقطار أو بالطائرة فوسائل النقل الحديثة جعلت من الممكن الاستمتاع بالسفر..
٣. لقد أصبحت الحياة افضل بفضل الاختراعات الحديثة لان المرء يمكنه الان أن ينتقل من مكان لآخر بالسيارة أو بالقطار أو بالطائرة فوسائل النقل الحديثة جعلت من الممكن الاستمتاع بالسفر..
٤. لقد أصبحت الحياة صعبة بفضل الاختراعات الحديثة لان المرء يمكنه الان أن ينتقل من مكان لآخر بالسيارة أو بالقطار أو بالطائرة فوسائل النقل القديمة جعلت من الممكن الاستمتاع بالسفر..

### 2- A telephone is a mixed-blessing. Sometimes you get the wrong number and so you get angry. Some impolite people may disturb you while you are eating or even sleeping. Long ago people used pigeons to send messages. They were lucky.

١. إن التليفون نعمة ونقمة في ذات الوقت فأحيانا نحصل على الرقم الخاطئ وتغضب أو ربما يزعجك بعض الوقحين أثناء طعامك و ونومك. فلقد اعتاد الناس في سالف الزمان أن يستخدموا الحمام لارسال الرسائل.. لقد كانوا فعل محظوظين
٢. إن التليفون نعمة ونقمة في ذات الوقت فأحيانا نحصل على الرقم الصحيح وتغضب أو ربما يزعجك بعض الوقحين أثناء طعامك و ونومك. فلقد اعتاد الناس في سالف الزمان أن يستخدموا الحمام لارسال الرسائل.. لقد كانوا فعل محظوظين
٣. إن التليفون نعمة ونقمة في ذات الوقت فأحيانا نحصل على الرقم الخاطئ وتغضب أو ربما يزعجك بعض المحترمين أثناء طعامك و ونومك. فلقد اعتاد الناس في سالف الزمان أن يستخدموا الحمام لارسال الرسائل.. لقد كانوا فعل محظوظين
٤. إن التليفون نعمة ونقمة في ذات الوقت فأحيانا نحصل على الرقم الخاطئ وتغضب أو ربما يزعجك بعض الوقحين أثناء طعامك و ونومك. فلقد اعتاد الناس في سالف الزمان أن يستخدموا الانترنت لارسال الرسائل.. لقد كانوا فعل محظوظين

### 3. Peace among nations is vital. It gives every country the chance to carry out its development plans. It saves the money spent on wars and destructive weapons to be used for developing education and solving our problems.

- ١- السلام بين الامم ليس أمر ضروري فهو يعطى كل دولة الفرصة في تنفيذ خطط التنمية وتوفر الاموال المهدرة على الحروب وإنفاقها في تطوير التعليم وحل المشكلات
- ٢- السلام بين الامم أمر ضروري فهو يعطى كل قاره الفرصة في تنفيذ خطط التنمية وتوفر الاموال المهدرة على الحروب وإنفاقها في تطوير التعليم وحل المشكلات
- ٣- السلام بين الامم ليس أمر ضروري فهو يعطى كل دولة الفرصة في تنفيذ خطط التنمية وتوفر الاموال المهدرة على الحروب وعدم إنفاقها في تطوير التعليم وحل المشكلات
- ٤- السلام بين الامم أمر ضروري فهو يعطى كل دولة الفرصة في تنفيذ خطط التنمية وتوفر الاموال المهدرة على الحروب وإنفاقها في تطوير التعليم وحل المشكلات

## Chapter 9

### Jim Hawkins:

It was very hot and I was thirsty. The trees were near now, but before I could feel happy, I saw the **Hispaniola** sailing around. I was so thirsty that I did not know whether I would be happy or sad if the pirates found me.

I watched the **Hispaniola** and saw that it went east, then west, then stopped. Then it did the same again and again. Nobody was sailing it! But where were the men? I thought if I could get onto the ship, I could return it to **Captain Smollett**. I started to paddle the boat, sometimes hitting waves, but slowly getting closer to the ship. As I got nearer, I saw

nobody on the ship. It was so close that I could almost touch it. Suddenly, the wind changed and the ship was almost on top of me. I held onto a rope at the side of the ship just before it hit my little boat, which went under the waves. So, I found myself on the **Hispaniola**, with no other boat to save me.

I climbed up onto the deck, which seemed empty. The wind blew and the sails moved to the right, and then I saw them: **Hands** and the man he was fighting. I thought they were both dead, but then **Hands** said weakly: "Water!" I went downstairs. The pirates had broken all the cupboard doors when they were looking for the map, and the floor was dirty with sand and mud from the island. I found some water and some food, which I put in my bag, and I went back to give the water to **Hands**. He drank all of it, very quickly. "Are you hurt?" I asked him. "With a doctor, I'll be fine," he said. "And where have you been?" "Well, I've decided to take the ship, so you must now call me Captain," I said. He looked at me angrily, but he also looked very ill.

"Also, Mr. **Hands**, we can't have this flag on the ship," I said, and then I went to take down the black pirate flag. **Hands** looked at me, and then said, "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain **Hawkins**? Let's talk."

"That's a good idea," I agreed.

"I don't think you can sail this ship," **Hands** said. "So if you give me food and drink, and help me with my wound, I'll help you." "OK," I said, "But I'm not going back to where the ship was before. We're going to the north of the island."

"The north?" he asked. "Of course, I'll sail the ship wherever you want to go!"

So, I agreed to help him. I found a bandage to put on his wound and I also gave him some food and some more water. He soon looked better. He told me how to sail the ship. It moved quickly along the coast of Treasure Island and soon we could see the rocky north of the island. I felt good. I had water and food. The only thing that worried me was **Hands**. He looked at me all the time and I knew that he was planning something.

We arrived near the north of the island, and **Hands** told me how to stop the ship without an anchor. Then we sat down to eat.

"Could you go downstairs and get me some more water?" he asked.

I did not think for a minute that **Hands** was an honest man. He wanted me to leave the deck for a reason, but I did not know what this was. However, I also knew that **Hands** was not a clever man, so I agreed to go.

I went downstairs, made a lot of noise, then took off my shoes and went quietly to another part of the ship, where I could see him. He was moving slowly and painfully across the deck, where he picked up a knife. He then hid the knife in his jacket and sat down where he was.

Now I knew that he could move, that he had a weapon, and that he planned to hurt me. I did not know what he planned to do after that, but I knew that he could not hurt me until the ship stopped in a safe place near the island. I went back downstairs, put on my shoes and returned with a bottle of water. **Hands** was sitting quietly, and took the bottle without saying thank you. Then he said, "Look, the wind has changed. If we move the ship now, we'll be safe."

We had only two miles to go to the shore. It was difficult to get to the correct place on the coast, but **Hands** told me what to do. This part of the island was full of trees and we could see the wreck of an old ship lying on a flat beach. "We can stop there, on the beach," said **Hands**. I steered the ship slowly onto the beach, where it stopped with a low noise. I was so excited to arrive back at the island that I forgot to watch **Hands**. I suddenly turned round and there he was, standing with a knife in his hand. I cried out and he jumped at me. I moved quickly to one side and he fell on the deck.

Before he could stand up again, I took a gun from my jacket. However, the gun was wet

from my journey and it did not work. I was very angry with myself.

I was surprised at how fast he could move with the wound in his leg. As he ran towards me, I got ready to run away from him again, and he stopped. I remembered a game that I used to play with my friends in **Black Hill Cove** when one of us would try to catch the other. I was always good at this game and I thought that I could easily run away from this older pirate with a bad leg.

At that moment, a wave hit the **Hispaniola**. When the ship moved, we both fell over and I nearly fell onto **Hands**. Before he could stand, I decided to climb up the mast of the ship. Up in the sails, I had time to repair my gun and soon it would be ready to fire again.

**Hands** looked up at me and saw my plan. He, too, started to climb the sails, but he could only climb slowly because of his bad leg. Before he was near me, I had the gun ready. "If you come any closer, Mr **Hands**, you will be dead!" He stopped and I could see he was thinking about what he could do. "You're clever, **Jim Hawkins**," he said. "You've won."

I started to laugh, thinking I was clever, when suddenly he threw something at me. His knife flew through the air and hit me in the shoulder. I was so surprised that, without knowing how, my gun fired. **Hands** gave a cry and fell down into the sea. I never saw him again. The knife passed through my shoulder into the wood of the mast, so I could not move. It hurt badly. It took a long time before I could think. When I finally looked at the knife, I saw that it only went through a small piece of skin. It was not difficult to take out.

I climbed back to the deck and found a bandage for my wound. I was now alone on the ship and it was nearly dark. I quickly took down all the sails I could reach and then jumped down into the shallow water. I walked onto the sand, leaving the **Hispaniola** half on the beach and half in the water.

### Questions and answers:

1. Why do you think Jim wanted to take the pirates' flag down from the ship?

- To tell others he controlled the ship and became the captain.

2. In what way did Hands help Jim on the Hispaniola?

- He showed Jim how to sail the ship.

3. The flag is very important to any ship. How?

- It shows who controls or owns it.

4. Why do you think Jim decided to sail the ship to the north of the island?

- He wanted to keep the ship safe away from the pirates.

5. "Of course, I'll sail the ship wherever you want to go." Did Hands really help him? How?

- He showed him how to sail the ship, at the same time he wanted to deceive him to kill him.

6. Jim was a clever boy. How?

- He could cut the ship's rope to make the pirates lose it.

- He watched Hands and knew he was dishonest.

7. What's your opinion of Hands?

- He was a criminal as he wanted to kill Jim.

8. Why do you think Jim asked Hands to call him "Captain"? What was Hands' reaction?

- To make Hands know that he took control of the ship.

9. Hands was a strong pirate. Explain.

- he tried to attack Jim to kill him although he was injured.

10. Why do you think Jim climbed up the mast of the ship during his fight with Hands?

- To escape from Hands as he thought hands couldn't catch him as he was injured.

11. How do you think Jim was kind?

- he gave Hands some food and a bandage.

12. Hands was deceitful. Explain.

- He pretended that he would help Jim sail the ship but really he wanted to kill him.



**13. How do you think the changing wind helped Jim to get onto the ship?**

- The wind changed the way of the Hispaniola, and Jim found himself on the ship.

**Test unit nine****1 Choose two correct answers out of the five options given:**

1. My uncle has a lot of money, cars and flats. He is.....  
 a. wealthy                      b. poor                      c. exhausted                      d. ugly                      e. rich
- 2- Which of the following is an antonym of 'cruel'?.....  
 a. Merciful                      b. Fetal                      c. Brutal                      d. Savage                      e. kind

**1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The two boys looked very tired. They .....football .  
 a- have been playing                      b- had played                      c- play                      d- would play
2. Ann looked very frightened. Perhaps she.....  
 a- is dreaming                      b- dreams                      c- has dreamt                      d- had been dreaming
3. Mother looked exhausted. She .....for 2 hours.  
 a- is                      b- had been                      c- was being                      d- had been being
4. When I arrived at the meeting, I found that it .....  
 a- has just ended                      b- had just ended                      c- was just ending                      d- just ends
5. Before he operated the machine, he ..... the instructions carefully.  
 a- has read                      b- read                      c- reads                      d- is reading
6. I didn't know about the accident until I ..... the papers.  
 a- have read                      b- was reading                      c- read                      d- had read
7. After adopted an ----- who has lost his parents in a terrible accident..  
 a- see                      b- had seen                      c- had been seeing                      d- seeing
8. The new ----- was a hard worker. He cleans , sweeps , cooks etc .  
 a- governess                      b- nurse                      c- servant                      d- service
9. My family lives in a .....part of the country, 50 kilometres from the nearest town.  
 a- orphan                      b- elderly man                      c- orphanage                      d- oculist
10. Rich families used to bring a ----- to teach their sons and daughters at home  
 a- governess                      b- nurse                      c- servant                      d- service
11. I don't really like going to school every day so I prefer to go to ----- school.  
 a- ridiculous                      b- silly                      c- serious                      d- boarding
12. The enemy gave the war prisoners ----- treatment.  
 a- cruel                      b- cruelty                      c- kindness                      d- cruelly
13. Our ----- manages our house very well so we appreciate her work.  
 a- governess                      b- nurse                      c- housekeeper                      d- service
14. Do you think Egypt has a good -----?  
 a- learn                      b- educated                      c- educational                      d- education
15. You are not good at English , you should ----- a course in English  
 a- do                      b- make                      c- had                      d- having
- 16- Good friends are always keen on keeping in ----- with each other.  
 a) teach                      b) touch                      c) much                      d) match

**3) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Hi Dalia,

You asked me to tell you about the interview that I had on Tuesday. It did not start very well. My appointment was at eight o'clock so I had to get up very early. Then there was a downpour as I was walking to the office so I was very wet when I arrived. However, there were two other people who were there for interviews too, and they also got wet! When **it** was my turn, the manager was very friendly. He looked at my CV and said that I had excellent qualifications. Then he asked me to describe myself. I said that I was sociable and conscientious. He asked me if I spoke any languages. I told him that I spoke English fluently.

Then he asked me if I had done any volunteering. I told him that I often helped at a local charity for poor and disadvantaged children. He also asked me about my free time activities. I told him that I enjoyed weightlifting. He said that he found that surprising but also impressive! He asked me why I wanted to work for his company. I explained that it had a very good reputation and that I had always wanted to work as a tour guide in a big organisation. At the end of the interview, he said that I was an excellent candidate and I was qualified to do the job. He explained that he would make up his mind about who would get the job in the next few days. I really hope that I get it. Write soon. Best wishes,

Ola

1 Which of these questions did the manager ask?

a Do you do volunteering?

b Can you do volunteering?

c Have you done any volunteering?

d Why don't you do volunteering?

2 Which information did the manager find surprising?

a Ola helps a charity. b Ola was wet. c Ola is fluent in English. d Ola likes weightlifting.

3 Why did the manager want to know if she had done any volunteering?

a) Because he can't pay her

b To find out if she is a kind person.

c Because he works for a charity.

d As he needs someone to work with children.

4 What is the main idea of the email?

a Ola knows she has got the job. b Ola doesn't know if she has got the job yet.

c Ola can't get the job.

d Why Ola will start the job in a few days.

5- What does the underlined word " it " refer to?

a the tour guide

b the job

c the manager

d the company

6 What do you think that disadvantaged means?

a rich

b having problems

c strong

d voluntary

7 When was Ola's interview was on ( Saturday- Sunday-Monday-Tuesday)

8 The manager wanted to know if Ola spoke any languages as she was going to be -----

a) a tour guide

b) a teacher

c) a journalist

d) an ambassadress

### Choose the best translation

1. We should exploit our natural resources to raise our Egyptian national economy.

ا. يجب أن نهمل مصادرها الطبيعية للنهوض باقتصادنا القومي المصري.

ب. يجب أن نستغل مصادرها القومية للنهوض باقتصادنا القومي المصري.

ج. يجب أن نستغل مصادرها الطبيعية للنهوض باقتصادنا القومي المصري.

د. يجب أن نستغل مصادرها الطبيعية للنهوض بدخلنا القومي المصري.

2- الحرية هي اثن شيء في حياتنا ويجب الحفاظ عليها

a) Freedom is the most precious thing in our life and we should keep it.

b) Equality is the most precious thing in our life and we should keep it.

c) Freedom is the most delicious thing in our life and we should keep it.

d) Freedom is the most precious thing in our life and we should waste it.

### 4. The Novel

1. Jim proved to be clever. Give an example.

2. The boat of Ben Gun was useful to Jim. Why?

3. If you were Jim , how would you behave with hands?

5) Write an essay of about 150 words on one only of the following topics:

### 1. Food shortage.

# Unit Ten

## Vocabulary

What's your job?  
ما هي وظيفتك؟  
By: Mr El Sebaei Atteya

|                  |                    |                     |                |             |               |
|------------------|--------------------|---------------------|----------------|-------------|---------------|
| profession       | مهنة               | scientist           | عالم           | fair        | معرض          |
| professional     | محترف              | laboratory          | معمل           | notice      | بلا حظ        |
| casualty         | إصابة              | chemist             | صيدلي          | difference  | اختلاف        |
| department       | قسم                | chemistry           | كيمياء         | company     | شركة          |
| despite +v+ing   | بالرغم من          | contract            | عقد            | IT          | تكنولوجيا     |
| rewarding        | مجزي               | practical           | عملي           | experience  | خبرة          |
| qualifications   | مؤهلات             | improve             | يحسن           | academic    | أكاديمي       |
| incredibly       | لا يصدق            | products            | منتجات         | career      | مهنة          |
| apply for        | يقدم طلب           | challenge           | تحدي           | attention   | انتباه        |
| college          | كلية               | variety             | تنوع - تشكيلة  | confident   | واثق          |
| training         | تدريب              | several             | عديد           | confidence  | ثقة           |
| stressful        | مجهد               | deadline            | موعد أخير      | flexible    | مرن           |
| tiring           | مرهق               | obviously           | بوضوح          | loyal       | مخلص          |
| successful       | ناجح               | apprenticeship      | تدريب مهني     | loyalty     | ولاء          |
| communicator     | لبق                | construction        | إنشاء          | reliable    | موثوق به      |
| worries          | قلق                | degree              | درجة           | plumber     | السباك        |
| eligible         | مؤهل               | industry            | الصناعة        | vet         | طبيب بيطري    |
| popular with     | شعبي               | actually            | في الواقع      | assist      | يساعد         |
| legal            | شرعي               | reassure            | يطمئن          | assistant   | مساعد         |
| compassion       | شفقة               | reassurance         | اطمئنان        | kindness    | طيبة          |
| the public       | جمهور              | involve             | يتضمن          | period      | فترة          |
| firefighter      | رجل إطفاء          | besides             | بالإضافة       | punctual    | مواطب         |
| siren            | صفارة إنذار        | certificate         | شهادة          | type        | نوع           |
| teammate         | عضو فريق           | graduate            | خريج           | trapped     | محاصرين       |
| adapt to +v+ing  | يتكيف علي          | bachelor            | ليسانس         | torch       | شعلة          |
| fancy            | يتوهم              | caring              | مهتم           | rules       | قواعد         |
| require          | يتطلب              | statement           | بيان           | care        | يهتم          |
| compassionate    | حنون               | essential           | أساسي          | pursue      | يتعقب         |
| availability     | إتاحة / توافر      | equally             | بشكل           | ward        | عبر في مستشفى |
| vast             | شاسع               | nursing college     | كلية التمريض   | behaviour   | سلوك          |
| support          | دعم                | characteristics     | مواصفات / سمات | agreement   | اتفاق         |
| Egyptian cuisine | أسلوب الطهي المصري | casualty department | قسم الطوارئ    | job(s) fair | معرض الوظائف  |

### Definitions

|               |                                                                              |                    |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| rewarding     | Doing something that makes you feel good.                                    | مجزي               |
| flexible      | Describes someone who can change their behaviour in different situations     | مرن                |
| attention     | The act of listening to , looking at or thinking about something carefully . | انتباه             |
| career        | The series of jobs that a person has in a particular area of work            | حياته عمليه - مهنة |
| practical     | Relating to real activities and events more than ideas.                      | عملي               |
| qualification | Skills or knowledge that makes you eligible for a job or work                | مؤهل               |

|                            |                                                                        |                |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>casualty department</b> | An emergency room in hospitals                                         | قسم الطوارئ    |
| <b>apprenticeship</b>      | A period of time working to learn skills needed to do something        | تدريب مهني     |
| <b>attendant</b>           | A person whose job involves helping the public                         | عامل           |
| <b>communicator</b>        | A person who talks about their ideas and emotions in a clear way.      | لبق            |
| <b>degree</b>              | Qualification you receive when you finish university                   | درجه           |
| <b>industry</b>            | A particular kind of business that produces a particular type of goods | الصناعة        |
| <b>siren</b>               | A device that makes a long loud sound as a signal or warning           | جهاز تنبيه     |
| <b>fancy</b>               | To want to do something                                                | يتخيل          |
| <b>construction</b>        | The work of building something                                         | انشاء          |
| <b>training</b>            | Learning skills you need for a job                                     | تدريب          |
| <b>skill</b>               | The ability to do something well                                       | مهاره          |
| <b>care</b>                | Offer help and support others                                          | عنايه - اهتمام |
| <b>contract</b>            | a legal agreement                                                      | عقد            |
| <b>stressful</b>           | something which causes worry                                           | مجهد           |
| <b>team player</b>         | a person who works well with others                                    | لاعب فريق      |
| <b>punctual</b>            | happening or being done at exactly the time that is arranged           | مواطب          |
| <b>loyal</b>               | Someone who supports their friends even when it is difficult           | مخلص           |

### Expressions

|                                   |                               |                                   |                                 |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>a career in politics</b>       | مهنة في السياسة               | <b>Job fair</b>                   | معرض الوظائف                    |
| <b>CV ( curriculum vitae )</b>    | السيرة الذاتية                | <b>Book fair</b>                  | معرض الكتاب                     |
| <b>IT(information technology)</b> | تكنولوجيا المعلومات           | <b>Suitable for</b>               | مناسب لـ                        |
| <b>Post graduate studies</b>      | دراسات عليا                   | <b>do a degree in</b>             | يأخذ درجة في                    |
| <b>Rewarding job</b>              | وظيفة مجزية                   | <b>work experience</b>            | خبرة عمل                        |
| <b>Good communicator</b>          | محاور جيد                     | <b>work opportunity</b>           | فرصة عمل                        |
| <b>Medical profession</b>         | مهنة الطب                     | <b>academic study</b>             | دراسة أكاديمية                  |
| <b>Highly qualified</b>           | مؤهل جيدا                     | <b>vocational jobs</b>            | وظائف مهنية                     |
| <b>Practical solution</b>         | حل عملي                       | <b>involve in</b>                 | يتورط في - ينهمك في             |
| <b>Local products</b>             | منتجات محلية                  | <b>Hard- working</b>              | نشط                             |
| <b>Gradual improvement</b>        | تحسن تدريجي                   | <b>get ( do ) a job</b>           | يحصل على وظيفة                  |
| <b>Meet the deadline</b>          | يفي بالميعاد النهائي          | <b>cause worry</b>                | يسبب قلق                        |
| <b>find out about</b>             | يكشف عن                       | <b>help the community</b>         | يساعد المجتمع                   |
| <b>a two-year contract</b>        | عقد لمدة سنتين                | <b>make furniture</b>             | يعمل موبليا                     |
| <b>care for / about</b>           | يهتم بـ                       | <b>pursue a career</b>            | يستمر في مهنة                   |
| <b>apply for</b>                  | يتقدم لوظيفة / تأشيرة / لجواز | <b>Have( get) work experience</b> | لديه خبرة عمل                   |
| <b>apply to (a college)</b>       | يتقدم لجهة أو شخص             | <b>improve products</b>           | يحسن المنتجات                   |
| <b>relate to</b>                  | يرتبط بـ / يتعلق بـ           | <b>adapt to situations</b>        | يتبنى مواقف                     |
| <b>plenty of / a lot of</b>       | كثير من                       | <b>work in</b>                    | يعمل في (مكان / قسم / مجال)     |
| <b>eligible for a job</b>         | مؤهل للوظيفة                  | <b>work on</b>                    | يعمل في (تصنيع / تأليف / اصلاح) |
| <b>develop new ones</b>           | يطور الجديد منها              | <b>communicate ... to ...</b>     | يوصل شئ لشخص                    |
| <b>decide a job</b>               | يحدد وظيفة                    | <b>progress through</b>           | يتقدم في (خبرة / عمل)           |
| <b>make a formal request</b>      | يقدم طلب رسمي                 | <b>break down</b>                 | يتعطل / ينهار في البكاء         |
| <b>skills needed / requested</b>  | مهارات مطلوبة                 | <b>with serins sounding</b>       | بأصوات الابواق                  |
| <b>make ... in writing</b>        | يعمل ... كتابة                | <b>sit at a desk</b>              | يجلس على مكتب                   |
| <b>essential for</b>              | أساسي لـ                      | <b>be employed on</b>             | يتم توظيفه في                   |

|             |            |                         |                   |
|-------------|------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| at times    | فى أوقات   | What I like best about  | أكثر ما أحبه بشأن |
| do training | يحضر تدريب | receive a qualification | يستلم مؤهل        |

### Synonyms @ Antonyms

| Word        |             | Synonym                        | Antonym                         |
|-------------|-------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| caring      | مهتم        | concerned / attentive          | uncaring / cruel                |
| flexible    | مرن         | adaptable / adjustable         | inflexible / fixed              |
| honest      | امين        | fair / reliable / decent       | corrupt / illegitimate / dis... |
| stressful   | مجهّد       | worrying / distressing         | calm / easy / relaxing          |
| practical   | عملي        | functional / efficient         | theoretical / academic / im..   |
| punctual    | مواظب       | early / timely / precise       | late / behind / overdue         |
| hardworking | مجد في عمله | industrious / conscientious    | lazy / careless / indifferent   |
| reassuring  | مهدّي       | comforting / encouraging       | worrying / disturbing           |
| rewarding   | مجزي        | satisfying / worthwhile        | unrewarding / vain / barren     |
| reliable    | موثوق ب     | trustworthy / dependable       | irresponsible / vulnerable      |
| confident   | واثق        | certain / self-assured         | doubtful / tentative / shy      |
| loyal       | مخلص        | faithful / devoted / patriotic | disloyal / treacherous / false  |

### Language Notes

#### 1- (Although - though – even though - even if- but)

##### ١ - تستخدم الروابط الآتية للتعبير عن التناقض:

- هذه الروابط يأتي بعدها جملة ( فاعل ثم فعل ) و تعني بالرغم من
- تأتي هذه الروابط في أول أو وسط الجملة
- تأتي **but** في وسط الجملة ويأتي بعدها جملة كاملة

He was poor **but** (however+ yet ) he was happy.

**Although** he was poor, he was happy.

He was happy **although/ even if /even though/though** he was poor.

٢ - هذه الروابط يأتي بعدها شبه جملة و تعني بالرغم من

**Despite,**

**In spite of,**

**Regardless of,** + اسم (V. ing) + الجملة الثانية

**With all,**

**For all**

⇒ **In spite of** being poor, he was happy.

⇒ **Despite his poverty,** he was happy.

⇒ **Despite being clever,** he got low marks in exams.

#### Test yourself:

1. He played well , .....he lost the game.

a. although                      b. However                      c. because                      d. but

2.....his cleverness, he failed to achieve his goals.

a. Although                      b. However                      c. Despite                      d. in spite

3.....playing tennis is very funny , it is tiring

a. Although                      b. However                      c. because                      d. Despite

4.....cooking the food well, we didn't enjoy it.

a. Although                      b. However                      c. because                      d. Despite

5.....quickly he ran , he didn't win the race.

a. Although                      b. However                      c. because                      d. Despite

6. He got up early. ....,he didn't catch the train.

a. although                      b. However                      c. because                      d. but

7. Quickly.....he ran , he missed the train.

a. although                      b. however                      c. as                      d. because

8. .... quickly he ran , he missed the train.

a. Although                      b. However                      c. Because                      d. As

9..... you do, try your best.

a. Although                      b. However                      c. Because                      d. Whatever

10. .... the bad weather, we enjoyed ourselves.

a. Although

b. However

c. Despite

d. In addition to

ترابط ( and ) جملتين متشابهتين

1- It is very cold **and** it is windy 2- Messi plays well **and** scores plenty of goals.

2- **Not only** + فعل مساعد + فاعل + فعل أساسي ( **but also** ) + الجمله الثانيه تبع الاول في الزمن ( ليس فقط ولكن أيضا )

- **Not only does Messi play well but he also scores** plenty of goals لاحظ تقديم الفعل علي الفاعل

- **Not only did he play well but also he scored** a fine goal.

- **Not only ( had he studied – did he study ) well but he also got** high marks.

### Test yourself :

1- .....did he study well but also he got high marks..

a. In addition

b. As well as

c. And

d. Not only

2. The film was prepared and .....to people

a. showed

b. shown

c. chosen

d. choose

3. Not only .....goods but also ideas.

a. did countries sell

b. do countries sell

c. had countries sold

d. countries sell

4. Ali .....his sisters are very clever.

a. in addition to

b. as well as

c. and

d. since

5. Ali .....his sisters is very clever.

a. in addition

b. as well as

c. and

d. since

2-

Because

( الجمله الأولى (النتيجة)

as

( فعل + فاعل ) الجمله الثانية +

Since

1- Ali was very unhappy **because** he **didn't** succeed.

2- **As** he was ill, he went to the doctor.

3- **Since** she was wise, she could solve the problem.

→ الجمله الأولى

**because of / due to/ owing to /  
for / on account of / thanks to /**

} Noun  
v. ing

ولكن

- He went to the doctor **because of** being ill.
- She could solve the problem **due to** her wisdom/ **being** wise.
- The film was very successful **because of** the amazing sound quality

so

( الجمله الأولى (سبب)

that's why

( نتيجة ) الجمله الثانية +

1-He does a lot of exercise **so** he is fit .

2- She was ill **so** she went to hospital.

### Test yourself

1. (Because – Although – Because of – As) being 60 years old, Ali has retired.

2. (Though – Because – so – Despite) I was very tired, I took a permission to leave my work.

3. (As – In spite of – Because of – So) we ran fast, we caught the bus.

4. We didn't enjoy our holiday (due to – although - in spite – since) the rain.

5. (Despite – Because – Though – Due to) the pain in his leg was great, he didn't complet the race.

6. (To be-Being- Have been-Be) ill, he failed to pass the exam. ( 2023 - ث ع )

3 - He took a ten ( minutes – minute's – minutes' – minute ) break for coffee.

- He is a 20- year-old student. The astronauts usually do two-hour space walks.

- I spent a (one) year's time in bed after that accident.

- She spent four months' time in bed after that accident.

- I usually have a ten-minute break between my study sessions.

- a three-day conference / three day conferences / a two-hour drive / ten years' time.

يمكن التعامل مع الاسم علي انه معدود مثل المثال الاول التالي ويمكن يكون غير معدود مثل المثال الثاني

\* We went on a three-year mission in space.

\* We went on three years' mission in space.

4- a job ( وظيفة ) تجمع

- My mother has a lot of jobs to do - I will look for a nice job .



- **a career** (مهنة) حياة الفرد المهنية - I enjoyed **my career** as a teacher - He wants **a career** in baking
- **profession** (مهنة) (تحتاج مؤهلات) (teaching profession) (medical profession)
- Teaching is **a difficult profession**
- **work** (الشغل - مكان العمل) (اسم لا يعد)
- I have got a lot of work to do. - Mr Ahmed leaves work at two o'clock.

### 5-Bachelor (أعزب - ليسانس أو بكالوريوس) Bachelor of commerce رياضة

- 6- **Rely on – depend on – count on** (يعتمد عليه) **reliable** - جدير بالثقة - He is **reliable**
- 7- **qualify as a teacher / an accountant** (يتأهل كـ) (يأتي بعدها الوظيفة)  
He qualified as a doctor two years ago.
- **qualify in biology / archaeology** (يحصل علي مؤهل في) (تخصص معين)  
He qualified in medicine last year.
- **be qualified to + inf.** (يكون مؤهل لك) - She is qualified to teach English.
- 8- **decide to + (inf) / that + sentence** (يقرر)  
- She decided to go out. He decided that you should attend.
- **decide on + noun** (يحدد / يختار)
- You have to decide on your goal in life.

- 9- **graduate from** (يتخرج من) - He graduated from the Faculty of Medicine.
- **a graduate of** (خريج لـ) - He is a graduate of the Faculty of Medicine.
- **graduate with a degree in** (يتخرج بشهادة في)
- He graduated with a degree in history.
- 10- **every** (كل (صفة يأتي بعدها اسم) و يأتي بعدها مفرد أو عدد (٢ - ٣ - ٤))  
Every student should do his best to get high marks.  
The world cup is held every 4 years.
- **each** (كل (صفة يأتي بعدها اسم أو محل الاسم) و يأتي بعدها مفرد)  
Each student should do his best to get high marks.  
All friends attended the party, each gave her a present.

- 11- **outdoor (adj)** (خارجي) (بعدها اسم) - Football is an outdoor game.
- **outdoors (adv)** (في الخارج) - Archaeologists usually work outdoors.
- **indoor (adj)** (داخلي) (بعدها اسم) - Girls usually like indoor activities.
- **indoors (adv)** (في الداخل) - The boys are playing computer games indoors.

- 12- **part of** (جزء لا يتجزأ) - Egypt is part of the continent of Africa.
- **a part of** (جزء يمكن فصله) - A part of your work should be revised again.

- 13- **experience** (خبرة في مجال العمل) (لا تعد) - This work needs big experience.
- **an experience** (خبرة في الحياة) (تعد) - Travel gives him a lot of experiences.

- 14. **connect something to something** (أو مصدر طاقة يوصل بجهاز)  
First connect the printer to the computer.
- **connect someone / thing with something** (يربط / يرتبط بـ / يتعلق بـ)  
The railway link would connect Tanta with Cairo.  
There was nothing to connect him with the crime.
- **contact** (يتصل بـ) - Don't hesitate to contact me if you need anything.

- 15. **apply for** (يتقدم بطلب للحصول علي وظيفة / تأشيرة / جنسية / مكان في الجامعة، الخ)
- **apply in person** (يتقدم بالطلب شخصيا) - **apply in writing** (يقدم الطلب كتابياً)
- **apply to + inf.** (يتقدم بطلب لكي) - **apply to + noun** (يتقدم بالطلب إلي)
- **apply to + noun** (ينطبق علي) - **apply** (يوظف يُطبق -)

Ex: She **applied for** a job with the local newspaper.  
She is going to **apply for** citizenship next month.  
You should **apply immediately**, in person or by letter.  
He has **applied to** join the police.

The offer only **applies to** flights from London and Manchester.

I **applied to** four universities and was accepted by all of them.

Some of the children seem unable to **apply** what they have learned.

**16- affect** يؤثر على = **have / has a/an+ صفة + effect (impact- influence) on** --- لديه تأثير على

-Smoking affects our health badly. -Smoking has a bad effect on our health.

**17** لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية ولكن عند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير جمع: **(they, them, their)**

**- Everyone / everybody / someone / somebody / no one / nobody / anyone / any body / (any / every person)**

- **Everyone** benefits from space technology in **their everyday lives**.
- **Everyone** has **their own** ideas about the best way to bring up children.
- **Anybody** can do it, **can't they?**

**18.-Sports** رياضي

**Sportsman** الشخص الرياضي

**sporty** صفة تأتي قبل للاسم

**Do - play sports**

يمارس الرياضة

**I should play ( do ) sports to get fit.**

**sports relating to sport**

صفة تأتي قبل الاسم

متعلق بالرياضة

It's the school sports day on Monday.

Do you belong to a sports club?

He'll be remembered both as a brilliant footballer and as a true sportsman.

We are a very sporty family.

**19- suggest / recommend+ V + ing // = suggest / recommend that + مصدر + should + فاعل**

-He **suggested spending** the holiday in Hurghada.

-He **suggested that they should spend** the holiday in Hurghada.

-He **suggested that Ali spend** the holiday in Hurghada.

**20-Busy + verb+ing**

- I am **busy doing** my homework

### **LISTENING**

**Narrator: Ahmed**

Man: Did you find out about any **job opportunities** at **the job fair**, Ahmed?

Ahmed: I had a talk with a man from an IT company and he said that there were lots of jobs for young people in his **company**. He told me that I needed to have good maths and IT skills but also English. He said that most people in IT used English at work. I asked him if I needed to **do a degree** in Information Technology and he said 'no'.

**Narrator: Sarah**

Woman: Hello Sarah. Was the job fair interesting?

Sarah: Yes, I've decided what I want to do as a job now.

Woman: Oh, what's that?

Sarah: I want to be a **flight attendant** for an **international airline**. I talked to a woman from an airline company and she said that it was a really interesting job. She told me that I had to speak **at least** two other languages as well as Arabic, so I'm going to start learning French. I asked her how many countries she has visited and she said that so far she'd been to over 40 - imagine that!

**Narrator: Omar**

Fatima: Did you get any useful information about work at the fair, Omar?

Omar: Yes. I'm not going to go to university, but I'm going to **learn a trade**. I spoke to a man who owns a **construction company** and I told him that I didn't really like studying and that I wanted to **do something practical**.

Fatima: Well, you've always been really good at making and fixing things. Mum and Dad agree, too.

Omar: I know. That's what I told him. He asked me whether I had had any **work experience** and I told him that I'd been helping our uncle make furniture for a few years. He said

that would be useful and that I should try and **get an apprenticeship** in a local company.

-----  
Woman: It's a really interesting job.

Ahmed: Do I need to do a degree in Information Technology?

Man 1: There are lots of jobs for young people in my company.

Omar: I'm interested in doing a practical job.

Man 2: Do you have **any work experience**?

-----  
Samir: Hello, this's Samir. The bus has **broken down** so I'll be late for the meeting.

Hassan: Hello, my name's Hassan. I read the story that is online and I really like it.

Dalia: Hi, Nabila, this is Dalia. I'm sorry you're ill and didn't come to school today, but you don't need to worry, there isn't much homework to do.

Mum: Hi Laila, Mum here. I'm working late this evening. There is some fish and rice in the fridge so you can cook it yourself if you're hungry.

Tarek: Ahmed, it's Tarek. Have you seen the news? **Turn on the TV**, because **it's very exciting**.

### READING

In this week's article called **What's your job?** We're talking to two **young professionals** about their work.

Ali works in **the casualty department at a busy hospital**. He says that, **despite the long hours and hard work**, the job is **incredibly rewarding**.

1. **Why did you choose to become a nurse?**

Well, I've always **enjoyed caring for** people, so it **seemed a natural thing** to do. I **decided to apply to nursing college**, **did my training** and then got a job here.

2. **Do you like your job?**

Yes, I love it, although it is very **stressful** at times. People are sometimes **frightened**, so part of my job is to make them feel calm, which can be hard.

3. **Is there anything you don't enjoy?**

Not really, although I work from 7 am till 6 pm every day, which is very **tiring**.

4. **What skills do you need to be a successful nurse?**

You need to be a good **communicator** – a lot of nursing is about listening to **people's worries** and **explaining** what the doctors are going to do. You need to have good **medical knowledge** too, but **understanding and kindness** are really important.

-----  
Nadia is a **scientist** and works **in a laboratory as a chemist**.

1. **Why did you choose to become a scientist?**

My best subject at school was **chemistry**, so I decided to study it at university. After I **graduated**, I got a two-year **contract to work** here.

2. **What do you like best about your job?**

I'm a very **practical person** and a lot of my job is about trying **to improve products or develop** new ones. I enjoy the **challenges** and **the variety of my work**.

3. **Are there any challenges in your job?**

Of course any job has challenges. It can sometimes be difficult when you're working on several products and each one has a **deadline** to meet.

4. **What qualifications do you need to be a successful scientist?**

Obviously, you need a **degree** in Science, but you also have to be good **at problem solving**. It's important to be able to **communicate** your ideas to other people too, and that can be difficult sometimes if they're not scientists.

### My Dream Job

Name: Mohammed Age: 23

**Dream job:** Firefighter

**Skills:** You should be: **a team-player, reliable, a good communicator, flexible**

**Workplace:** Central Cairo

I always wanted to be a firefighter. When I was a little boy, I played with toy **fire engines** and sometimes watched the fire engines driving down the streets with their **sirens sounding**. I knew that I wanted to help people and I also knew I wanted a job which wasn't in an office. I'm not great at sitting at a desk and wanted a job that was **outside**, exciting and had a lot of variety.

**Firefighting** can be dangerous and it can be very hard work, but I wouldn't do any other job. You must be able to communicate well with your **teammates** and also be happy to **adapt to different situations** when **necessary**.

Do you **fancy a career as a firefighter**? If you want an exciting job helping **the community**, come and visit me on **Stand 21 at the Jobs Fair**.

Date: 23 May

Time: 9.00 – 14.00

If you're not **interested in firefighting**, there are plenty of other jobs to find out about here at the Jobs Fair. Bring your friends and family along – you never know **what career** is out there for you!

### Work-book Texts

#### CV

Name: Nabila El-Soory

Age: 24

**Address:** Central Cairo, Egypt

**Dream job:** Teacher **Qualifications**

**Post Graduate Certificate in Education:** Bradly **College**, Oxford, England

**Bachelors Degree in English:** Cairo University, Cairo, Egypt

**I am:** **punctual, reliable, a good communicator, caring**

**Experience:** I've always wanted **a job helping people**. I watched many lessons on **my training course**, and I taught English to young **people aged 7-16 years** old in the UK.

**Personal statement:** I am **punctual and reliable**. I can **communicate well with** young people, and I believe that I am **a patient and caring professional**.

**Interests:** Reading, **theatre**, and **Egyptian cuisine**

**Availability:** **Immediate**

### Video Script

The world of work is **vast**. There are **routes** into **employment** for everyone, with **options** to study at university, through **apprenticeships** or **progressing through work experience**.

**Job fairs** are often held to give **non-biased information** about many **industries**. They can tell you about what **qualifications, skills and experience** you will need, and you can also find out about what you can expect to earn.

Every job has **its challenges** and **rewards** which can affect a person's decision about whether **to pursue** a **career**. **Equally**, some **characteristics** are **essential for** certain jobs. For example, **a medical professional** must be **compassionate, caring and have excellent communication skills**.

### Exercises on unit : 10 (Voc.)

**1 Choose two correct answers out of the five options given:**

1. Doctors have a.....job as they make a lot of money.  
a. frustrating                      b. streeful                      c. challenging                      d. rewarding                      e. profitable
2. We should .....the truth to be honest.  
a. admit                                      b. deny                                      c. tell                                      d. promise                                      e. have
3. We should be loyal. The antonym of 'loyal' is.....  
a. honest                                      b. helpful                                      c. kind                                      d. dishonest                                      e. treasonable
4. The nurse is a caring person. **Caring** means.....  
a. interested                                      b. unconcerned                                      c. unkind                                      d. loving                                      e. cruel
5. Working as a teacher is a stressful job. The antonym of the word "stressful" is .....  
a. demanding                                      b. easy                                      c. worried                                      d. relaxing                                      e. challenging

**1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1- My father works in the English ( part - section - department - corner ) at Zagazig University
- 2- My wife is a ( work hard - hard work - hard working - works hard ) woman. She does all her duties at home well
- 3- My wife's job was ( incredible - incredibleness - credible - incredibly ) influential. All the company depends on her financial statements.
- 4- Some people find working as a teacher very ( reward - rewarded - rewarding - rewards ) and worthwhile as they give private lessons.
- 5- He found an interesting ( work - job - works - efforts ) as an accountant in a big company.
- 6- Worry is the synonym of the word ( stressful - stress - stressed - stresssing ).
- 7- The applicants ask about the skills ( required - require- requiring-requires ) for this job.
8. I'm a very ( social -practical -previous -envious ) person and a lot of my job is about trying to improve products .
- 9- A person who supports their friends when it's difficult is ( loyal - confident - flexible - honest ).
- 10- When she finishes secondary education, she hopes to join the ( colleague - collage - college - colligate ) of Medicine.
- 11- My brother is well ( qualify - qualified - qualification - qualifies ) to do heart operations
12. Do you fancy a ( career- work- profession-occupation) as a firefighter?
13. A person who can explain their ideas well is a good ( communication - communicate - communicator - communicating ).
14. A lot of youth want to (imply-supply-apply-reply) any available job because of lack of jobs .
15. My friend has been ( rewarded - awarded - won - gained ) a prize because of his great achievements in charities.
16. The rich man ( rewarded - awarded - won - gained) the driver who returned a bag of money to him.
17. Heping other people makes me ( felt - feel - feeling - feels) happy and satisfied.
18. When you are ( replying - applying - replaying - allying ), you are making a formal request, usually in writing.
19. After I had graduated, I got a ( two-years - two-yearly - two-year - two-year's ) contract to work abroad.

- 20- You should have a little more ( train – practice – survey – heating ) to pass your exams.
- 21- Candidates should have training and ( practical – practices – practise – practiced ) experience.
- 22- We shouldn't buy ( styles – production – article – products ) that don't have labels.
- 23- To get this job, you must ( prove – approve – improve – strove ) your language skills.
- 24- When he was climbing the mountain, he met many ( challenge – challenges – challengers – danger ).
- 25- Climbing the mountain was very ( challenge – challenging – changing – danger ) but amusing.
- 26- You can choose from a ( vary – various – variable – variety ) of books here.
- 27- The National Bank will ( see- advertise-apply-qualify ) for some vacant jobs on TV.
28. Although teaching is a difficult profession , it is very ( challenge-disappointing-boring-rewarding )
29. You should be ( unsociable -introvert -flexible -bored ) and accept any job even if it is a hard job.
30. My CV includes my personal details and my ( qualifications -qualify -requirements - refreshments )
- 31- You should apply for the job before the ( redline – wrinkle line – deadline –offline ).
- 32- The changes in my fiance's character were very ( obvious – short – double –violated ). We admire him.
- 33- I should study hard to get good ( degrees – grades – remarks – qualifications ).
- 34- He teaches at university and has a ( degree – grade – qualify – mark ) in Biology.
- 35- We always play football ( outdoor – indoor – outdoors – indoors ).
- 36- My friend advised me to look ( after – at – into – for ) another job to improve my income.
- 37- My friend advised me to ( search – find – look – make ) another job to improve my income.
- 38- She is a ( attractive – careless – caring – useless ) nurse. She offers help and support to every patient.
39. It seems a ( artificial – industrial – cultural – natural ) thing to talk with others openly.
40. I applied ( to – for – in – with ) a big company for a job advertised in the news paper.
41. She was well qualified for the job because she had ( did – had – made – taken ) training in this field.
- 42- My teacher is greatly ( experiences – experience – experienced – expert ) in teaching English. He uses different techniques in teaching English.
- 43- My new job responsibilities are very ( worried – stressed – stressful – worry ). I suffer a lot.
- 44- When my teacher becomes angry, he looks ( frightened – frightening – afraid – terrified ). I feel afraid of him.
- 45- Doing her job and bringing up children are very ( hardly – hard – heard – hardness ) for a mother.
- 46- Through training well and hard work, Mayar Sherif became a ( success – succeed – successful – successive ) player.
- 47- This work needs many ( skills – skulls – rewards – trains ) to master it.
- 48- You should be very ( skills – skill – skillful – skillfully ) to master this job.
- 49- The emergency room in a hospital is called ( casual – causable – causality – casualty ) department.
- 50- Learning skills you need for a job is called ( skill – training – qualifications – contract ).
- 51- We hope that Egypt will ( attend- qualify-join-withdraw ) for the next World Cup Finals .



- 52- ( Certificate -Degree -Apprenticeship -Apprentice) is a period of time working in order to learn some new skills.
- 53- The flight ( attendant -passenger -pilot -servant) helps passengers on the plane.
- 54- The ( attention - attendant -conductor -carpenter) at the petrol station helps drivers and motorists fuel their vehicles
- 55-The Arab Contractors Company is responsible for a lot of ( constriction - destruction - construction -distinct) in Egypt.
- 56- My ambition is to have a ( degree - mark -reward- class ) in medicine to have a respectable job.
- 57- Mohammed is a ( dishonest -reliable -cheat -unfaithful) person . You can depend on him.
58. Many traditional teachers are in bad need of ( training - raining - draining – gaining)to adapt to the new educational system.
59. My old job was a nightmare but this one's truly a ( dream - ambiguous - dim – sleep)job.
60. Lack of ( specialty - similarity - poverty – variety) and poor nutritional quality of foods limits peoples' ability to eat healthfully.
61. You must accept the contract. There are no other ( adoption - chooses - operations – options)
62. Hospitals must be ready to deal with ( casualties - physicians - doctors – specialists) of motorway accidents.
63. Nursing the practice or profession of ( daring - caring - looking – searching) for the sick and injured
64. Teachers should have a lot of good ( qualities - quantities - equalities – disabilities) and one of them is to be organized .
65. The two nations reached a- an ( understanding - argument - standing – underground) on the problems of borders.
66. Women's salaries are low compared to what men ( beat- gain-earn- win) for the same work.
67. After a three-year ( apprentice - relationship - partnership – apprenticeship) in a workshop , he could work as a mechanic.
68. Street children decide to leave home for ( cancerous - generous - various – variable) reasons.
69. Ali's mother is very ill so he gave up his job to ( dance - nurse - look for – purse)her.
70. We shouldn't ( marry - carry - worried – worry) our future. Allah is the helper and will assure all our hopes.
71. Don't sign any ( contract - contact - attract – subtract) before examining its conditions carefully.
72. Finding a solution to problems is one of the greatest ( canals - channels - advantages – challenges) faced by scientists today.
73. I read his biography to find (in-on-about-around) his life.
74. Dinner will be ready in half an hour - just be ( slow- patient-hasty-nervous) !
75. The ( plumber - attendant - vet – baker)is coming tomorrow to install the new washing machine.
76. We should be ( profitable - moveable - amateur – professional) when we deal with our relatives at work.
77. The manager has a lot of ( practice - practical - critical - optical)experience in dealing with these kinds of problems.

78. Can't we ( employer - employee - employ - employment) someone as an assistant to help you with all this work?
79. My sister has finished her training and she is now a ( experience - profession - qualified - liquefied)engineer.
80. People have to have such a lot of ( cruelty - patience - speed - speech) when you're dealing with kids.
81. If the eyes are badly injured, seek ( delayed - health - relaxed - immediate)medical care.
82. My uncle is a very ( comparison - compassionate - comrade - introvert)person. All the family like him.
83. A job ( pair- fair-palace- department) is an event where employers offer information about their companies to people who are looking for jobs
84. The money will be distributed ( equation - equality - equally - equal)among the winners.
85. Working for a big ( employable - employee - employer - unemployment)can be good, as there are often opportunities for promotion.
- 86- ( Skill - Training - Qualification - Contract ) is skills or knowledge that make you eligible for a job or work.
- 87- When you have the required skills, you will be (legible - illegible - eligible -legibility ) for the job.
- 88- The matter was so ( emergency - emergent - emerge - merge ) that he couldn't wait till the morning.
- 89- Companies do their best to ( make - say - do - exert ) their jobs rewading.
- 90- Last week I vested Cairo International Book ( Exhibition - Fair - Justice - gallery ) and bought a lot of useful books.
- 91- A ( degree - grade - qualification - mark ) is a qualification you receive when you finish university.
- 92- A / An ( skill - industry - training - contract ) is a particular type of business that produces a particular type of goods or services.
- 93- The World Cup of football is played ( all - each - every - whole ) four years.
- 94- A / An ( attention - industry - apprenticeship - degree ) is a period of time working in order to learn skills needed to do a job.
- 95- Our manager has great ( experiences - experience - experienced - experiment ) in solving problems .
- 96- The abbreviation of Information Technology is ( CV - IT - BSc - BA ).
- 97- I love my job ( but -although -because -so) it is very stressful at times.
98. I've always enjoyed caring for people, ( but -although -because -so) it seemed a natural thing to do.
99. (In spite- Because of - Despite - Due to) the long hours and hard work, the job is very rewarding.
- 100- You need good medical knowledge, ( and -despite -because -so) compassion is also really important.
- 101- Ali has a very good job at the hospital ( but -although -because -so) he works in the city centre
- 102- He lives a long way from the hospital, ( but -although -because -so) he does not drive to work.
- 103- He always cycles, ( but -although -because -so) he is very fit!
- 104 ( But -Although -Because -So) he also helps a charity in the evenings, Ali does find some time to relax.
- 105.He loves swimming in the sea. He even swims in the winter, (in spite- because of - despite - due to) the cold weather!
- 106- He was punished ( although - but - despite - however ) coming early.

**Grammar****Direct & Indirect speech** المباشر و غير المباشر**الجملة الخبرية****-عند تحويل جملة من مباشر إلى غير مباشر نتبع الآتي :-**

❖ تغييرات خارج الأقواس :-

|                           |                               |                              |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>say</b> → <b>say</b>   | <b>say to</b> → <b>tell</b>   | <b>said</b> → <b>said</b>    |
| <b>Says</b> → <b>says</b> | <b>says to</b> → <b>tells</b> | <b>said to</b> → <b>told</b> |

**- تحذف الأقواس ونربط بـ that أو بدونها .****-- يتغير الزمن داخل الأقواس إذا كان الفعل خارج الأقواس ماضي كالآتي .**

|                          |                                               |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| مضارع بسيط → ماضى بسيط   | <b>must</b> الاستنتاج → <b>must have + pp</b> |
| مضارع مستمر → ماضى مستمر | <b>must</b> → <b>had to</b>                   |
| مضارع تام → ماضى تام     | <b>have to - has to</b> → <b>had to</b>       |
| ماضى بسيط → ماضى تام     | <b>mustn't</b> → <b>wasn't to</b>             |
| الأفعال الناقصة → ماضيها | <b>needn't</b> → <b>didn't have to</b>        |

❖ تحول الظروف الزمنية والمكانية كالآتي :

|                                                                  |                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>yesterday</b> → <b>the day before (or) the previous day</b>   |                                  |
| <b>tomorrow</b> → <b>the next day (or) the ( following ) day</b> |                                  |
| <b>now</b> → <b>then</b>                                         | <b>today</b> → <b>that day</b>   |
| <b>tonight</b> → <b>that night</b>                               | <b>ago, last</b> → <b>before</b> |
| <b>next</b> → <b>the following</b>                               | <b>here</b> → <b>there</b>       |
| <b>this</b> → <b>that</b>                                        | <b>these</b> →                   |

He says "I will travel to Port Said "

He **says** that he **will travel** to port said next day.

She says, "I'm phoning my father "

She **says** that she **was phoning** his father.

Ahmed said, " I have won the prize."

Ahmed **said** that he **had won** the prize

He said to me, " I will visit my uncle."

He **told me** that he ( will - **would** ) visit his uncle.**إذا غيرنا الزمن نغير العلامة كالآتي**

He said to Ali , " We played football yesterday."

He **told Ali** that they ( **played - had played** ) football **the day before**.

She said to her father, " I'm travelling to Cairo tomorrow."

She **told her** father that she ( **is- was** ) travelling to Cairo **the following day**

He said, " I'm writing my homework now."

He **said** he **was writing** his homework **then**❖ لاحظ :- إذا كان داخل الأقواس أكثر من جملة نربط الأولى بـ **that** والثانية نربطها بـ **and added that**

She said "I didn't attend the party. I must apologize."

She **said** that she **hadn't attended** the party **and added that** she **had to apologize**.**ملاحظات عامة**

❖ لا يتم تغيير ما بداخل الأقواس فى هذه الجمل لأن ما بداخل الأقواس حقيقة علمية.

Ali said to Ramy, " The earth is round."

Al **told** Ramy that the earth **is** round.

## ❖ لأن فعل القول مضارع بسيط .

Rania says, " I will travel to London."

Rania **says** that she **will travel** to London

## ❖ لأن الحدث قيل فى الحال أو قبل فترة بسيطة.

He said just now, " No one is allowed to leave."

He **said just now** that **no one is allowed to leave**.

❖ لأن الجمل شرطية - if الحالة الثانية أو الثالثة وبعد wish / If only.

She said, " If I had met him, I would have known the news."

She **said** that if **she had met him**, she **would have known** the news.

He said, " If I had the money, I would buy a car."

He **said** that if he **had** the money, he **would buy** a car.

He said, " I wish I got the prize."

He **said** he **wished he got** the prize.

إذا جاء مع جملة القول عبارته تدل ان الحدث انتهى حالا فلا تتغير الأزمنة داخل الأقواس مثل **a moment ago** -

He said just now, " I'm travelling tomorrow."

He **said just now** that **he is travelling tomorrow**.

## الجملة الأمرية

❖ يتحول فعل القول إلى :- **ordered - asked - told - advised**

❖ في الأمر المثبت نستخدم ( المصدر + **to** )

He said to his son "study hard."

He **advised** his son **to study** hard.

❖ في الأمر المنفى نستخدم ( المصدر + **not to** )

He said to me "don't waste your time."

He **advised ( told ) me not to waste** my time.

He said to me " Open the door and don't close the window."

He **ordered me to open** the door and **not to close** the window.

## الجملة الاستفهامية

❖ عند تحويل جملة من مباشر إلى غير مباشر نتبع الآتى :-

❖ يتحول فعل القول إلى :- **asked - wondered - wanted to know**

❖ السؤال المبدوء بفعل مساعد أو ناقص تحذف الأقواس ويربط بـ **if** أو **whether**

❖ السؤال المبدوء بأداة استفهام نربط بها كما هى وتحول الجملة إلى خبرية وتحذف **do - does** -

❖ ويصبح الفعل ماضى بسيط وتحذف **did** ويصبح الفعل ماضى تام .

She said to me, "Do you speak English ?"

She asked **me if I spoke** English ?"

He said to me, "where did you spend your holiday last year ?"

He **asked me where I had spent** my holiday **the year before**.

Ahmed said to me, " How much money did you earn last week?"

Ahmed **asked me how much money I had earned** the week before.

Ola said, " What will you do tomorrow?"

Ola **asked what I would do** the next day.

❖ فى جمل العرض .

He said, "Can I help you ?"

He **offered to help** me.

❖ في جمل التمني .

He said to me, "Have a nice holiday."

She **wished me a nice holiday**.

❖ في جمل الاتهام .

He said to the servant, "You stole my wallet."

He **accused the servant of stealing** his wallet.

❖ في جمل الاقتراح .

He said, "Let's swim"

He **suggested swimming**. He **suggested that they should swim**.

❖ الوعد .

His father said, "If you get high mark, I'll buy you a bike."

His father **promised to buy him** a bike if he got high marks.

❖ في جمل الشكر يحول فعل القول إلى **thanked** .

He said to me, "Thank you very much."

He **thanked me very much**.

❖ إذا جاءت كلمة **yes** تحذف ويتحول فعل القول إلى **agree** .

He said to me, "yes, I shall go with you."

He **agreed to go** with me.

❖ إذا جاءت كلمة **no** تحذف ويتحول فعل القول إلى **refuse** .

She said to me, "No, I won't obey your orders."

She **refused to obey** my orders.

❖ لا تتغير بعض التعبيرات مثل **would like - would rather - had better** .

I said to my friend, "Would you like to go with me to the cinema?"

I **asked my friend if he would like to go** to the cinema.

❖ يتحول الفعل **come** إلى **go** إذا جاء مع **here** التي تتحول إلى **there** .

He said to me, "come here."

He **ordered me to go** there.

❖ إذا وجد بالجملة سؤالين أحدهما بأداة استفهام والآخر بفعل مساعد نستعمل أداة الاستفهام كأداة ربط ونستعمل **if** في الجملة الثانية

She said to me, "Where did you go yesterday ? Can you answer this question ?"

She **asked me where I had gone the day before and if I could answer** that question.

❖ إذا وجد بالجملة سؤال وجملة خبرية يوضع قبل السؤال **asked** وقبل الجملة الخبرية **said - told** .

He said, "You can solve your problems. Will you follow my advice?"

He **said that I could solve** my problems and **asked if I would follow** his advice.

❖ تحول **couldn't** إلى **wasn't allowed to** .

He said to me, "I couldn't interrupt my parents."

He told me that **he wasn't allowed to interrupt** his parents.

❖ إذا بدأت الجملة داخل الأقواس بـ **if** الافتراضية تحول كالاتي :

**advise + مفعول + to + المصدر من جواب الشرط**

He said, " If I were you, I would buy a car."

He **advised me to buy** a car.

❖ تحول **must** إلى **had to** في الماضي .

He said, " I must study hard."

He **said that he had to** study hard.

❖ لا تتحول **must** إذا كانت تدل على وجوب دائم .

She said, "Children must obey their parents."

She **said that children must obey** their parents.

❖ تحول **must** إلى **would have to** في المستقبل .

He said, " I must go to Cairo tomorrow.

He **said that he would have to** go to Cairo tomorrow.

❖ إذا كانت الجملة داخل الأقواس تعبر عن دعوة تتحول كالاتي :-

مفعول + **offer** + فاعل

He said to me, "would you like to have a drink ?"

He **offered me a drink.** Or He **asked me if I would like to have** a drink.

~~~~~

### Mr El Sebaei Grammar Exercises تمارين الوحدة الاخيره

- 1.He said that he ( will visit – would visit – is visiting – visited )his friend the following day.
2. Ali ( wondered – said - said to – told ) his son had bought a car the day before.
- 3.Ola told me that she ( would – will – had – had ) visit Tanta the following day.
- 4.The teacher told his students that The Nile ( ran - had run - will run – runs )in Egypt.
- 5.He (said – asked – wondered – wanted to know) he wouldn't be able to sleep until he had finished the homework.
- 6.She said that she (want – wants – wanted – is wanting) to be a writer.
- 7.She admitted that her brother (was helping – is helping – he is helping – he was helping) her with her homework that afternoon
- 8.She said they (meet – are meeting – have been meeting – were meeting) them there the following Saturday
- 9.She (asked – wondered – complained – ordered) that she had waited for more than an hour for her appointment.
- 10.They promised that they (phone – would phone – will phone – phones) us as soon as they arrived.
- 11.He admitted that he (arrives – has arrived – had arrived – will arrive) late the night before.
- 12.She (exclaimed – refused – asked – explained) that she was hoping to come and see me the following week.
- 13.He asked me if I knew that his sister (is – has been – had been – will be) ill.
14. 15. I admitted that I (don't have – am not having – didn't have – doesn't have) any plans.
- 15.He denied (to be – had been – was – being) at the scene of the crime
- 16.I explained that I (would have to – will have to – will – shall) ask my mother
- 17.Peter (asked – wondered – promised – wanted) he would phone me that evening.
- 18.She said, "I (didn't see – won't see – wasn't seen – hadn't seen) anyone until I have finished.
- 19.Ahmed asked me ( why – where – what – when ) I had gone the day before.
- 20.Do you know where ( Ola went - did Ola go - Ola had gone - had Ola gone )the previous day.
- 21.The police ( told – warned – wondered – wandered )people from the deadly spiders.
- 22.I do not approve ( of - in- off - at )your opinion.
- 23.He asked me where I ( stay - did I stay - was staying - am I staying )then.
- 24( Who - Whose - Where - How many)book was the one you were pointing at?
- 25.The interviewer asked the professor ( whether – unless – that – whatever )he had worked.
- 26.I want know how ( you helped - have you helped - do you help - had you helped )her.
- 27.Can you kindly tell me where ( is the manager - the manager is - the manger was )?
- 28.She asked me whether ( I had been - I went – I go - had I been )there before.
- 29.She asked him (which – what – whether – who) he was going out.
- 30.She asked me (carrying – to carry – carry – carried) the bag for her.
- 31.He wanted to know how much I (pay – have paid – had I paid – I had paid) for my car.



32. She refused (lending – lend – to lend – to lending) me the money I needed.
31. Soha said that she had gone to bed early.....
- a) now                                      b) today                                      c) that night                                      d) tonight
32. He told her that she was the most beautiful girl he ..... ever seen.
- a) did                                      b) is                                      c) has                                      d) had
33. John..... to go to France on holiday.
- a) said                                      b) decided                                      c) admitted                                      d) told
34. Ghada apologized for ..... to my party because she was going away for the weekend.
- a) coming                                      b) came                                      c) not coming                                      d) not to come
35. Marry informed me that she would play cards .....
- a) the day after                                      b) the following day                                      c) tomorrow                                      d) yesterday
36. Walaa ..... her parents to study really hard for her exam.
- a) promised                                      b) claimed                                      c) persuaded                                      d) suggested
37. The coast guard ..... us not to go into the water.
- a) explained                                      b) complained                                      c) advised                                      d) admitted
38. She admitted that her brother.....her with her homework that afternoon.
- a) is helping                                      b) help                                      c- helps                                      d- was helping
39. She said they.....them there the following Saturday.
- a) were meeting                                      b) are going to meet                                      c- will meet                                      d- met
40. She explained that she..... to come and see me the following week.
- a) hopes                                      b) hope                                      c- was hoping                                      d- will hope
41. He admitted that he had arrived late the night.....
- a) next                                      b) then                                      c- after                                      d-before
- 42- Peter ..... he would phone me that evening.
- a-asked                                      b- wondered                                      c – promised                                      d – wanted
- 43- She said, "I ..... anyone until I have finished.
- a- didn't see                                      b – won't see                                      c- wasn't seen                                      d- hadn't seen
- 44- She asked me, "..... the DVD?"
- a- Have you watched                                      b – You watched                                      c – You are watching                                      d- You watch
- 45- She asked him ..... he was going out.
- a- which                                      b- what                                      c- whether                                      d- who
- 46- She ( told – wondered – complained – ordered ) she had waited for more than an hour for her appointment.
- 47- They promised that they ( phone – would phone – will phone – phones ) us as soon as they arrived.
- 48- He admitted that he ( arrives – has arrived – had arrived – will arrive ) late the night before.
- 49- She explained that she ( hopes – will hope – hope – was hoping ) to visit me the following week.
- 50- He agreed that he would not tell anyone what I ( say – saying – will say - had said ).
- 51- Warda said just now that she ( is – had been – were – was ) hungry.
- 52- Ahmed told us that his father ( is – was – had been – has ) a doctor.
- 53- He said that when he ( is – has been – 'll be – had been ) to the museum, he saw the statues.
- 54- Nadia agreed ( would start – will start – start – to start ) revising her lessons that evening.
- 55- Nadia agreed that she ( would start – will start – start – to start ) revising that evening.
- 56- Nahla promised that she would help me to revise if I ( want – wanted – had wanted – was wanting ).
- 57- Mr Farag said he ( has passed – had passed – passed – would pass ) his driving test the previous year.
- 58- He ( said – said to – told – complained ) me that he had been working as a sales assistant.

- 59- He explained that his uncle ( has – has been – was – was being ) encouraging him to find another job.
- 60- He said that his uncle ( had sold – have sold – has sold – is selling ) our products for many years.
- 61- He said that he was a sociable person and so he ( will – shall – would – must ) enjoy talking to customers.
- 62- I told him that we aren't interviewing any more people ( that day – the day before – the next day – today ).
- 63- I ( told – promised – asked – ordered ) that I would contact him on Saturday morning.
- 64- He said he would be home the ( previous – next – before – last ) morning.
- 65- Tarek explained that they were hot because they ( was – are – had been – have been ) playing tennis.
- 66- I said, "Yes, it would." This means I ( agreed – shouted – refused – told ).
- 67- He ( said – told – wondered – asked ) he wouldn't be able to sleep until he had finished the homework.
- 67- She said that she ( want – wants – wanted – is wanting ) to be a writer.
- 68- She admitted that her brother ( was helping – is helping – he is helping – he was helping ) her with her homework that afternoon.
- 69- She said they ( met – are meeting – had been meeting – were meeting ) them there the following Saturday.
- 70- He denied ( to be – had been – was – being ) at the scene of the crime.
- 71- She said, "I ( didn't see – won't see – wasn't seen – hadn't seen ) anyone until I have finished."
- 72- She refused ( lending – lend – to lend – to lending ) me the money I needed.
- 73- The biologist said, "These fish swim upstream." The biologist said these fish ( swim – swam – swum – are swimming ) upstream.
- 74- The teacher told me what I ( have – must have – will have – had ) to do.
- 75- The teacher promised that he ( will explain – would explain – explained – had explained ) that point the following week.
- 76- I admitted that I ( don't have – am not having – didn't have – doesn't have ) any plans.
- 77- The teacher told us that the earth ( orbit – orbited – orbits – will orbit ) the sun.
- 78- He explained that his uncle ( was helping – helps – helped – had helped ) him then.
- 79- Khaled told me that he ( plays – had played – played – was playing ) basketball the day before.
- 80- The teacher suggested that ( we do – we are doing – doing – did we ) the exercise again.
- 81- Sayed recommended ( to try – tried – trying – that try ) the ice cream.
- 82- The teacher told us that Russia ( is – were – has been – would be ) the biggest country in the world.
- 83- Haytham said that it ( will be – would be – is – is being ) hot that day.
- 84- The manager ( recommended – suggested – threatened – said ) to make us stay in late if we didn't work harder.
- 85- They said they were planning to study medicine ( next – the next – the following – the previous ) year.
- 86- The boy promised that he wouldn't make ( this – that – those – these ) mistakes again.
- 87- Mother said, " You'll be tired ( the next day – tomorrow – the following day – next day )."
- 88- He ( told – asked – said to – admitted ) robbing the bank.
- 89- He asked me ( what – who – weather – if ) I knew that he had been ill.
- 90- We wanted to know ( what – when – where – if ) they thought of his idea.
- 91- Rawia asked Kholoud what she ( has done – does – would do – had done ) the evening before.
- 92- Hany asked Fady whether he ( went – had gone – goes – could go ) to the museum the next day.

- 93- The teacher ( said – told – inquired – promised ) whether we had found the homework easy or difficult.
- 94- Imad wanted to know when ( does he go – will he go –he can go –he would go ) to university.
- 95- I asked the strange man ( if – that – who – weather ) he could tell me about his career.
- 96- "Do you have a pencil?" – I asked him if he ( has – had – had had – have ) a pencil.
- 97- He asked me where ( am I living – I was living – I had lived – he has lived ) at that moment.
- 98- She asked me which subjects ( I am studying – was I studying – am I studying – I was studying ) the following year.
- 99- She asked him what ( had he been doing – he was doing – he had been doing – he is doing ) since he left school.
- 100- He asked why ( I want – I wanted – do I want – did I want ) to work abroad.
- 101- They asked if my parents ( know – are knowing – have known – knew ) I was there.
- 102- He asked me ( whether – weather – if – that ) I had a driving licence or not.
- 103- They want to know who ( did win – won – do win – had won ) the match.
- 104- They wanted to know who ( did win – won – do win – had won ) the match.
- 105- He asked me why ( I had wanted – had I wanted – did I want – I wanted ) to work for their company.
- 106- She wanted to know how ( I would feel – would I feel – I feel – had I felt ) about working in another part of the country.
- 107- She wondered ( if – whether – where – why ) Sama'd gone to school or not.
- 108- I ( inquired – wondered – wanted to know – told ) the name of Ali's cousin.
- 109- I asked Amr what ( he had doing – he was doing – was he doing – he had done ) then.
- 110- He asked me just know whether I ( followed – had followed – follows – am following ) him or not.
- 111- The teacher asked me what ( will happen – happened – would happen – happens ) if wood is put in water.
- 112- Mariam asked me whether we ( usually go – had usually gone – were usually going – usually went ) to the park.
- 113- The teacher wanted to know which exams I ( passed – have passed – am passing – had passed ).
- 114- Mr. Sedawy asked me ( if – weather – that – did ) I'd done my homework.
- 115- Hala asked Ola ( what will she do – what would she do – what she would do – what she will do ) the following Monday.
- 116- We ( inquired – admitted – threatened – promised ) about the price of a room at the hotel.
- 117- She asked me, "( Have you watched – Did you watched – You'd watched - You watched ) the DVD?"
- 118- She asked me ( which – what – whether – who ) I was going out with.
- 119- She asked me ( carrying – to carry – carry – carried ) the bag for her.
- 119- He wanted to know how much ( I pay – I have paid – had I paid – I had paid ) for my car.
- 120- She asked him ( if – whether – to – that ) leave then or she would phone the police.
- 121- She asked me which university ( had I been to – go I to – did I go to – I had been to ).
- 122- She asked me ( if – whether – when – which ) university I had been to.
- 123- He asked me ( why – which – whether – whose ) I wanted to work for their company.
- 124- She asked me ( when – that – where – weather ) I was living at that time.
- 125- She asked me why ( applied – had I applied – I had applied – did I apply ) for that job.
- 126- She wondered when ( had I begun – I had begun – did I begin – I began ) singing with that band.
- 127- The inspector asked him whether he always ( caught – catch – catched – had caught ) such an early train.

- 128- He asked me when ( would the next exam – the next exam will – will the next exam – the next exam would ) take place.
- 129- I don't know why ( are they – they are – were they – they had ) buying a new house.
- 130- He said to me, "What ( you are – are you – you were – were you ) doing now?"
- 131- He asked me to give ( him – me – I – he ) some money.
- 132- I asked h if she had enjoyed her stay in Alex ( last week – the next week – the week before – the week ago ).
- 133- She wanted to know what ( I did – I do – I will do – do I do ) in spare time.
- 134- He wanted to know ( what – whether – unless – who ) she was married to.
- 135-He is good at football, so we ( encouraged – ordered – warned – threatened ) him to join the school team.
- 136- The tour guide ( encouraged – suggested – warned – said ) the tourists not to go into the desert on their own.
- 137- Maya advised Ola ( to – not to – don't – never ) start revising for the test.
- 138- The teacher ( advised – begged – wondered – ordered ) the students to stop running in the corridor.
- 139- The doctor asked me ( don't – never – too – to ) take off my jacket.
- 140- My friend said “ ( not to – to – to not – Don't ) apply for the same kind of job.”
- 141- My wife encouraged me ( to – don't – not to – from ) waste time.
- 142- A friend warned me ( to – to not – not to – don't ) apply for the same kind of job.
- 143- He advised me ( to – not to – don't – didn't ) retrain as soon as possible.
- 144- My husband suggested that I ( will study – am going to – shall study – study ) languages.
- 145- The teacher ( say – said – ask – ordered ) us to open our books at page 20.
- 146- My mother recommended that we ( are wearing – should wear – wearing – would wear ) coats.
- 147- My friend ( said – told – inquired – wondered ) me not to sit on the wall.
- 148- The referee ( said – advise – ask – ordered ) the player to stop the game.
- 149- We were hungry, so my father suggested ( going – went – go – to go ) out for lunch.
- 150- The ship's captain ordered the sailors ( work – working – to work – must work ) harder.

## Skills

### A. Choose the best answers:

#### 1. Without motivation in life, it's hard to strive for success and achieve internal happiness.

#### You should try to achieve more success for yourself first before trying to please other people.

- A. بدون مشاكل الحياة ، من السهل السعي لتحقيق الطموح وتحقيق السعادة الداخلية. يجب أن تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح لإرضاء نفسك أولاً قبل محاولة إرضاء الآخرين.
- B. بدون الدافع في الحياة ، من الصعب السعي لتحقيق النجاح وتحقيق السعادة الداخلية. يجب أن تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح لنفسك أولاً قبل محاولة إرضاء الآخرين.
- C. بدون الدافع في الحياة ، من السهل السعي لتحقيق النجاح وتحقيق الذات. يجب أن تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح لنفسك أولاً قبل محاولة إرضاء الآخرين.
- D. بدون الدافع في الحياة ، من الصعب السعي لتحقيق النجاح وتحقيق السعادة مع الآخرين. يجب أن تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح لاثبات ذاتك أولاً قبل محاولة إرضاء الآخرين

#### 2. Accepting others is a highly civilised aspect that we all should have. You can express your opinion and respect the opinions of others as well.

- a. يُعتبر قبول الآخر سمة متحضرة للغاية يجب أن نتحلى بها جميعاً. يمكنك التعبير عن رأيك واحترام آراء الآخرين أيضاً.
- b. يُعتبر قبول الآخر سمة متعصبة للغاية يجب أن نتحلى بها جميعاً. يمكنك التعبير عن رأيك واحترام الآخرين أيضاً.
- c. يُعتبر قبول الآخر سمة متحضرة للغاية يجب أن نتحلى بها جميعاً. يمكنك التعبير عن رأيك والاحتراس من آراء الآخرين أيضاً.
- d. يُعتبر قبول الآخر سمة سيئة للغاية يجب أن نتحلى عنها جميعاً. يمكنك التعبير عن رأيك واحترام آراء الآخرين أيضاً

#### 3-If each citizen has done his duties, we will be able to achieve progress and welfare.

- أ- لو قام كل مواطن بأداء واجباته سيتمكننا تحقيق الازدهار و العدل.
- ب- لو قام كل مواطن بأداء واجباته سيتمكننا تحقيق التقدم و الرفاهية
- ج- لو قام كل مواطن بأداء واجباته سيتمكننا تحقيق الادخار و الرفاهية.
- د- لو قام كل مواطن بأداء واجباته سيتمكننا تحقيق التقدم و المساواة.

#### 4- التنمية المستدامة هي استراتيجية تهدف إلى تحقيق أهداف التنمية البشرية مع الحفاظ في الوقت نفسه على الموارد الطبيعية التي يعتمد عليها الاقتصاد والمجتمع

- A. Sustainable development is a strategy that aims to achieve humane development goals while simultaneously preserving the natural sources that the economy and society rely on.
- B. Social development is a strategy that aims to achieve human development goals while simultaneously preserving the natural resources that the country and society rely on.
- C. Sustainable development is a strategy that aims to achieve human development goals while simultaneously preserving the natural resources that the economy and society rely on.
- D. Sustainable development is a strategy that needs to achieve human development plans while simultaneously preserving the natural resources that the economy and society rely on.

5. سوق العمل لم تعد الخبرة وحدها هي العامل الاساسي الذي يضعه أصحاب الأعمال في الاعتبار، هناك مهارات العمل التي لا تقل أهمية عن الخبرة

- A. In the labour market, experiment alone is no longer the main factor that are work skills that are more employers take into consideration; there important than experience.
- B. In the labour market, experience alone is no longer the main factor that are work skills that are no less employers take into consideration; there important than experience.
- C. In the labour market, experience alone is still the main factor that important than skills. Employers take into consideration; it is more important than experience.
- D. In the labour market, experience alone is no longer the main factor that are work skills that are not as employees take into consideration; there important as experience.

٦- لا تزال أثارنا القديمة من أهم العوامل التي تجذب السائحين.و لذلك يجب الاعتناء بها و الحفاظ عليها.

- a) Our ancient monuments are still one of the main factors attracting tourists so we should take care of them and protect them.
- b) Our ancient monuments are still one of the main factors which attract tourists so we should take to and protect them.
- c) Our ancient mountains are still one of the main factors which attract tourists so we should take care of them and protect them.
- d) Our ancient monuments are one of the main factories which attract tourists so we should take care of them and protect them

## Chapter 10

**Jim Hawkins:**

At last, I was back on the island. The ship was safe from the pirates, ready for our men to go back to sea. I looked forward to telling my friends about my latest adventure and started to walk back across the island. I remembered the map, so I knew how to return to the place where I had met **Ben Gun** for the first time. As I continued, it was very dark. It was difficult for me to find my way, but the light of the moon helped me. When I was near the fort, I went more slowly. I did not want my friends to think I was a pirate. Suddenly, I saw a red light through trees. What was it? Then I saw that there was a big fire next to the fort. I thought that this was unusual, as **Captain Smollett** was always very careful not to waste wood for the fire. I quietly went back inside the dark fort, and I was very pleased to hear the men inside talking quietly. However, I realised that they were not good guards because nobody saw me return. I was about to climb into my bed when I heard the words, "Who is it? Who is it?" I realized that it was Captain **Flint, Silver's** parrot! Everyone in the room woke up, and I heard someone call out: "Who's there?" It was **Long John Silver!** I turned to run away but I ran into a man, who held on to me. I was trapped. "Bring a torch, **Dick,**" said **Silver.** When he returned with a torch, I could see inside the room. I realized that the fort was now full of pirates. Our food was on the table, too, but I could not see any of my friends. Was it possible that they were all dead? There were five pirates standing in the room. Another pirate lay in bed. He looked badly hurt. **Silver** looked tired. His parrot was on his shoulder, and his clothes were dirty. "So, **Jim Hawkins!**" said **Silver.** "It's nice of you to visit us. You don't have to stand up for **Jim!**" he told his men and they lay down on their beds again. "I knew you were clever," **Silver** said to me. "I always

wanted you to be one of us, because I was like you when I was a boy. Now, you can't go back to your friends because they think you've left them. So, unless you want to stay on your own, you'll have to join us now." I was pleased to hear that my friends were still alive, but I was not happy to hear that they did not want me anymore. "Now, you don't have to say yes," said **Silver**. "I can't tell you what to do." "I'll answer you," I said, in a weak voice. "First, I want to know where my friends are."

"Yesterday morning," explained **Silver**, "**Dr Livesy** came down with a white flag. He told me that the **Hispaniola** was not there any more. We looked round and he was right! The ship was gone! Then the doctor said that we could have the fort. I asked him how many of them were in the fort, and he said there were four, and one of them was hurt. And he said he did not know or care where you were. So here we are. I don't know where they are now." "Do I have to decide now?" I asked. "Yes, you have to decide now," said **Silver**. "Very well. But there are some things you need to know. First, you have lost your ship, you have lost your treasure and you have lost many of your men. How did you lose them? It was me! I heard your plans on the **Hispaniola** and told **Captain Smollett**. And I cut the anchor ropes of the ship, and took it to a place that you don't know. I'm not frightened of you! You can kill me if you want, but remember: if you don't kill me, I'll help you at your trial. So, now you have to decide. What will you do with me?"

I stopped talking and all the men looked at me angrily.

"That was the boy who knew **Black Dog** in **Bristol**!" said one of the pirates called **Morgan**. "And he was the boy who got the map from **Billy Bones**!" **Morgan** then stood up with a knife. "Stop!" called **Silver**. "Do you think that you're the captain now? You do as I say!" **Morgan** and the other pirates were quiet. "I like this boy," **Silver** continued. "I've never seen a better boy than him. He's more of a man than any of you."

The other pirates did not look happy and they started to talk quietly to each other. "What are you saying?" said **Silver**.

"We don't like all of your rules," said one of the pirates. "We're going to talk together without you. You can't stop us." Soon, all the men left the room, and only **Silver** and I remained. "Listen **Jim**," said **Silver**. "I don't think that they want me to be the captain any more."

But I can look after you, if you look after me." "Do you mean that they want to kill you?" "They don't need me now that I don't have the ship. But if you save me, I can save you." I was surprised to hear this. He was the leader of the gang of pirates, and now he wanted the help of a boy. "I'll do what I can," I told him.

"You're a good boy!" he said. "I know you've got the ship safe somewhere. I don't know how you did it, but you did. Remember, I'm now with Mr **Trelawney** and his men. So, why did the doctor give me the map, Jim?"

He saw that I was surprised. "Yes, he gave it to me. He must have a plan, you know. Let's hope it's a good one."

I looked out of the fort and saw the pirates talking in a group. One of the men had some paper and a knife and the others were watching him. Then they started to walk back towards us.

"They're coming!" I told **Silver**. "Let them come!" he said.



## Test unit ten

**1 Choose two correct answers out of the five options given:**

1. We should encourage industry to increase our exports. The synonym of ' **industry** ' is....  
 a. manufacture      b. factory      c. mall      d. company      e. business
2. We trust our army as it is.....  
 a. rewarding      b. dependable      c. disloyal      d. reliable      e. false

**1) Choose the correct answer:**

1. .... is the production of goods from raw materials , especially in factories.  
 a- Agriculture      b- Industry      c- Tourism      d- Economy
2. He was in the second year of his ----- as a carpenter.  
 a- apprenticeship      b - apprentice      c- appetite      d- garage
3. We are looking for someone who is ----- and hard-working.  
 a- lazy      b- naive      c- reliable      d- traitor
4. You deserve a ----- for being honest and helpful  
 a- word      b- reward      c- reword      d- ward
5. We need a ----- to fix the pipe in our kitchen.  
 a- plumber      b- baker      c- engineer      d- chemist
6. Under the terms of the ----- the job should have been finished yesterday  
 a- job      b- work      c- contact      d- contract
7. Working hard besidens self ----- lead to success.  
 a- confident      b- rely      c- confidence      d- contract
8. ----- , the fact that she is confident , she is too nervous.  
 a- Despite      b- Due to      c- Although      d- Because
9. I look for a job as an ----- in any petrol station.  
 a- waiter      b- architect      c- attendant      d- hostess
10. Lisa asked her father why ----- late the night before.  
 a- did he come      b- had he come      c- he has come      d- he had come
11. The teacher wonders ----- I am keen on studying engineering or not.  
 a- whether      b- which      c- when      d- wither
12. . My father promised me that he ----- me a mobile the following month.  
 a- will buy      b- would buy      c- bought      d- had bought
13. She doesn't study hard and ----- does her brother.  
 a- so      b- neither      c- either      d- too
14. My teacher told us that the sun ( rises – rose – will rise – would rise ) in the east.
15. . ----- for the job in the bank should have a degree in accountancy  
 a- Apply      b- Applicants      c- Application      d- Applying
16. A ----- rescues people from burning houses .  
 a- plumber      b- chemist      c- secretary      d- firefighter

**\* Read the following passage then answer the questions: ( Mr Ahmad Ramadan - Brilliance Series )**

If you plan on going to Hawaii, don't bring any pets. Hawaiians are wary of letting in foreign animals. Your beloved Rex of Fi-fi could spend up to 120 days in quarantine. They have strict rules for importing animals. They carefully screen all incoming pets. Who could blame them? They had problems with new animals in the past. The black rat was introduced to Hawaii in the 1780s. These ugly animals originated in Asia, but they migrated to Europe in the 1st century. Since then they've snuck on European ships and voyaged the world with them. These rats carry many diseases including the plague. They are also good at surviving and tend to displace native species. Since their arrival in Hawaii, black rats have been pests. They've feasted on sea turtle eggs. They have eaten tree saplings, preventing trees from being reforested. And they have been a leading cause in the extinction of more than 70 species of Hawaiian birds.

Perhaps more troubling, black rats threaten humans. They spread germs and incubate diseases. Rats also eat our food. They eat more than 20% of the worlds farmed food and that's why the mongoose was brought to Hawaii. Black rats were destroying entire crops. Thus, plantation owners decided to import an animal known to kill rats. In 1883 they imported 72 mongooses and began breeding them. Mongooses were first brought up as tame in their origin in India. Mongooses feed on snakes, rats and lizards, creatures that

most people dislike. However, when the mongooses got to Hawaii, they didn't wipe out the rats as plantation owners hoped. Instead, they joined them in ravaging the birds, lizards and small plants that were native to Hawaii. It is not that the mongooses became friends with the rats. They still ate a bunch of them. Now Hawaii has two unwanted guests defacing the natural beauty.

**17- The underlined word "leading" is closest meaning to .....**

- a. guiding                      b. obscure                      c. dangerous                      d. major

**18- Mongooses were taken to Hawaii with the hope of .....**

- a. killing snakes, rats and lizards    b. eating their food  
c. getting rid of black rats    d. having new species of tame animals

**19- Hawaiians are worried about allowing any foreign animals to enter their land because .....**

- a. all foreign animals are wild.                      b. These animals must follow strict laws of the Hawaiians.  
c. The Hawaiians are very conservative.  
d. The Hawaiians had a previous bad experience related to this issue.

**20- Based on the text, which best explains how black rats were introduced to Hawaii ?**

- a. The native Hawaiians imported them to solve a problem with their crops.  
b. The Asian brought them to Hawaii when they first arrived.  
c. The European brought them on their ships.                      d. The rats were able to swim to Hawaii from Asia.

**21- Which event happened first ?**

- a. The mongoose was introduced to Hawaii.                      b. The black rat was introduced to Hawaii.  
c. The black rat migrated to Europe.                      d. Plantation owners bred mongooses.

**22- At the present time .....**

- a. The Hawaiians are suffering from two enemies, black rats and mongooses  
b. The Hawaiians could easily overcome the problem of black rats  
c. The Hawaiians show all the natural beauty                      d. The mongoose became friends with black rats

**23- According to the text, what will happen if you bring your pet with you to Hawaii ?**

- a. You will have to go back as you won't be allowed to visit Hawaii  
b. You will be allowed to enter unless your animal is a black rat  
c. You will be allowed on condition that you bring a mongoose with you  
d. You have to be patient and accept all the Hawaiians' rules and conditions

**24- Black rats have eaten saplings and this .....**

- a. caused more saplings to grow                      b. stopped forests from renewing  
c. helped forests renew themselves                      d. prevented trees from finding food to grow.

**Choose the best translation:**

**25- The government and the citizens should cooperate together to decrease birth rate as it is a good way to raise living standard .**

- ١- ينبغي أن تتعاون الحكومة و المواطنين بهدف الإقلال من معدل المواليد لأن ذلك من أهم السبل لرفع مستوى الأسرة.  
٢- ينبغي أن تتعاون الحكومة و المواطنين بهدف الإقلال من معدل المواليد لأن ذلك من أهم السبل لدعم مستوى المعيشة.  
٣- ينبغي أن تتعاون الحكومة و المواطنين بهدف الإقلال من معدل المواليد لأن ذلك من أهم السبل لرفع مستوى المعيشة.  
٤- ينبغي أن تتعاون الحكومة و المواطنين بهدف الإقلال من معدل الوفيات لأن ذلك من أهم السبل لرفع مستوى المعيشة.  
٢٦- تتمنى أمهات أن يجمع أولادهن بين البهجة والنجاح في حياتهم العلمية والعملية على الدوام

- a. Mothers hope that their children add pleasure with success in their scientific and practical life continuously  
b. Mothers are hoping that their children mix pleasure with success in their scientific and practical life permanently.  
c. Mothers hope that their children combine pleasure with success in their scientific and practical life permanently  
d. Mothers hope that their children will be pleased with success in their scientific and practical life permanent.

**The novel:**

27. Why do you think Jim tried to run away when he heard Silver in the fort?

28. What did Silver think of Jim?

29. Jim was a brave boy. Give an example.

**30 ] Write an essay of about 150 words on one of the following topics :**

**Your dream job**

# Unit Eleven

## Vocabulary

### Amazing people

By: Mr El Sebael Atteya

|                |           |              |                   |             |             |
|----------------|-----------|--------------|-------------------|-------------|-------------|
| athlete        | رياضي     | weights      | موازين            | positive    | ايجابي      |
| disability     | إعاقة     | race         | سباق              | marketing   | تسويق       |
| national       | قومي      | podcast      | تسجيل صوتي        | equal       | مساوي       |
| physical       | بدني      | metal        | معدن              | equality    | مساواة      |
| Olympics       | اولمبياد  | disc         | قرص               | media       | إعلام       |
| achieve        | يحقق      | paralympics  | اولمبياد المعوقين | activist    | ناشط        |
| achievement    | إنجاز     | lifter       | رافع              | campaign    | حملة        |
| compete        | يتنافس    | competition  | منافسة            | campaign    | يناصر       |
| Kung fu        | كونغ فو   | take part in | يشارك             | sign off    | يخرج        |
| medal          | ميدالية   | bronze       | برونز             | ramp        | مطلع كراسي  |
| muscle         | عضلة      | polio        | شلل أطفال         | assign      | يحدد        |
| powerlifting   | رفع أثقال | paralympian  | لاعب اولمبي       | community   | جالية       |
| wheelchair     | كرسي      | share in     | يشارك             | charity     | إحسان       |
| participate in | يشارك في  | racer        | متسابق            | possibility | إمكانية     |
| champion       | بطل       | athletics    | ألعاب             | lift        | مصعد        |
| terrible       | فظيع      | events       | أحداث             | celebrities | مشاهير      |
| accident       | حادث      | organisation | منظمة             | complaint   | شكوى        |
| amazing        | مذهل      | sociology    | علم اجتماع        | respond     | يستجيب      |
| madam          | سيدة      | campus       | حرم جامعي         | response    | استجابة     |
| support        | يساند     | bother       | يضايق             | negotiate   | يتفاوض      |
| colleague      | زميل      | access       | مدخل              | agreement   | اتفاق       |
| staff          | هينة      | current      | جاري              | nod         | يوماً براسه |
| employee       | موظفين    | a hole       | حفرة              | malaria     | مالاريا     |
| employer       | صاحب عمل  | benefits     | فوائد             | impact      | انطباع      |
| apology        | اعتذار    | arrest       | يقبض علي          | diversity   | تنوع        |
| apologise      | يعتذر     | bother       | يضايق             | account     | حساب        |

### Definitions

|                |                                                                  |               |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| achieve        | be successful in doing something good                            | يحقق - ينجز   |
| achievement    | something good that you have done successfully                   | إنجاز         |
| compete        | take part in a race or a competition                             | يتنافس        |
| Kung fu        | a Chinese sport which involves fighting with your hands and feet | كنغ فو        |
| medal          | a metal disc that you can win when you do or play a sport        | ميدالية       |
| muscles        | something inside your body that you use to move                  | عضلات         |
| powerlifting   | a sport where people lift weights above their heads              | حمل الأثقال   |
| wheelchair     | a chair with wheels used by someone who can't walk               | كرسي متحرك    |
| activist       | someone who tries to change things.                              | ناشط          |
| campaign       | to work in an organised way to change things.                    | حملة دعائية   |
| highs and lows | refer to successful and unsuccessful times                       | نجاحات وعقبات |

|                        |                                                              |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>ramp</b>            | a sloping surface joining two places of different levels.    | مطلع<br>كراسي            |
| <b>request</b>         | You make this to say what you want                           | طلب                      |
| <b>disability</b>      | A physical condition that limits someone to do something     | إعاقة                    |
| <b>disabled</b>        | Describe someone who can't use part of their body.           | معوق                     |
| <b>put pressure on</b> | To try to make someone do something                          | يضغط على                 |
| <b>sign -off</b>       | Another way for the close of an e-mail                       | م—<br>السلامة            |
| <b>spina bifida</b>    | some bones in the spine have not developed normally at birth | قصور في<br>العمود الفقري |

## Expressions

|                                |                        |                                 |                     |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>break a record</b>          | يحطم رقم قياسي         | <b>medical condition</b>        | حالة طبية           |
| <b>honest competition</b>      | مسابقة شريفة           | <b>athletics events</b>         | إحداث رياضية        |
| <b>hold a record</b>           | يحمل رقم قياسي         | <b>affect muscles</b>           | يؤثر على العضلات    |
| <b>help sb with disability</b> | يساعد شخص معاق         | <b>sales department</b>         | قسم المبيعات        |
| <b>paralympics</b>             | الومبياد المعاقين      | <b>campaign for / against</b>   | حملة ضد             |
| <b>special needs</b>           | احتياجات خاصة          | <b>equal opportunities</b>      | فرص متساوية         |
| <b>in charge of</b>            | مسئول عن               | <b>on long flights</b>          | في رحلات طويلة      |
| <b>work for charity</b>        | يعمل لصالح جمعية خيرية | <b>make a request</b>           | يعمل طلب            |
| <b>be added to</b>             | يُضاف الى              | <b>make a complaint</b>         | يقدم شكوى           |
| <b>compete in</b>              | يتنافس في              | <b>battle against</b>           | يشن حرب ضد          |
| <b>dedicated about</b>         | مُكرس لـ               | <b>enjoy sports benefits</b>    | يتمتع بمزايا رياضية |
| <b>come first / second</b>     | يأتي الأول / الثاني    | <b>do ... for living</b>        | يعمل ... للعيش      |
| <b>reply to questions</b>      | يرد على الأسئلة        | <b>achieve success</b>          | يحقق نجاح           |
| <b>receive training</b>        | يتلقى تدريب            | <b>do / practise a sport</b>    | يمارس رياضة         |
| <b>win a medal</b>             | يفوز بجائزة            | <b>use a wheelchair</b>         | يستخدم كرسي متحرك   |
| <b>make a difference</b>       | يعمل حاجة مختلفة       | <b>have ramps</b>               | به منحدرات          |
| <b>make changes</b>            | يُحدِث تغييرات         | <b>come in for an interview</b> | يدخل للمقابلة       |
| <b>bring hard work</b>         | يجلب العمل الشاق       | <b>give talks</b>               | (يُلقى خطبة) كلمات  |
| <b>lift weights</b>            | يرفع أثقال             | <b>inspire others</b>           | يلهم الآخرين        |

## Synonyms @ Antonyms

| Word        |        | Synonym                     | Antonym                          |
|-------------|--------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| able        | قادر   | effective / capable / fit   | unable / weak / inefficient      |
| amazing     | مذهل   | astonishing / breathtaking  | ordinary / poor / bad            |
| diversity   | التنوع | difference / variety        | uniformity                       |
| physical    | بدني   | real / natural / sensible   | mental                           |
| suitable    | مناسب  | fit / appropriate           | unfit / inappropriate            |
| achievement | إنجاز  | success / triumph           | failure / defeat / loss          |
| ability     | قدرة   | strength / competence       | inability / weakness / lack      |
| benefit     | فائدة  | interest / profit / utility | loss / damage / downside         |
| equal       | مساوي  | identical / balanced / fair | different / diverse / unequal    |
| difference  | اختلاف | contrast / argument         | similarity / harmony / agreement |

**Language Notes****Adjectives ending in (ed) & (ing)**

الصفات المنتهية بـ **ed** تعبر عن الفاعل أو المسبب لصفة سواء شخص أو شيء :

Ali is so **tired**. He has done many things. A cat is **frightened** if it sees a dog.

الصفات المنتهية بـ **ing** تعبر عن المفعول أو من تقع عليه الصفة سواء شخص أو شيء :

Shopping is very **tiring**. He is **annoying**. I'm **annoyed** with him.

2- **realize** يدرك - I'm sorry, I didn't **realize** that it was so late.

• **achieve** يحقق - He will never **achieve** anything if he doesn't work hard.

• **reach (goal – aim – target)** يصل إلى - Finally, He **reached** his goal.

3• **play** ( football, basketball, tennis, squash ... )

تستخدم مع الألعاب المتصلة بالكرة

• **go** ( fishing, sailing, swimming, running ... )

تستخدم مع الأنشطة المنتهية بـ **v-ing**

• **do** ( karate, hockey, high jump, judo ... )

تستخدم مع ألعاب القوى.

3• **affect** يؤثر على (بدون حرف جر) - Smoking **affects** health badly.

• **effect** تأثير (تأخذ حرف جر قبل المفعول) - Smoking has a bad **effect on** health.

4- **hear** يسمع ( سماع عارض - بدون قصد )

- When I was walking in the street I heard someone crying.

• **hear from** يتلقى رسالة من - Have you heard from Ahmed?

• **hear of - about** يسمع أخبار عن - يعرف بوجود شخص أو شيء - يتلقى معلومات عن

- She disappeared and was never heard of her again.

5• **fit** يناسب ( من حيث المقاس ) - That jacket **fits** you perfectly.

• **suit** يناسب (من حيث الشكل) - That blue shirt **suits** you. You look nice in it.

• **match** يتماشي مع ( للأشياء ) - Does this shirt **match** these trousers?

6• **manage to + inf.** يتمكن من - He **managed to answer** the test.

• **succeed in + (v + ing)** ينجح في - He **succeeded in answering** the test.

7• **good at** جيد فعل فعل شيء - She **good at cooking** / spelling / sports.

• **good for** جيد لـ (مفيد / صحي) - These herbs are **good for your health**.

• **good to** طيب / عطوف مع - My uncle is so **good to me**.

• **good with** جيد في مجال - He is so **good with numbers**.

8• **training** تدريب مهاري أو مهني - We have **training on how to use tablets**.

• **exercise** تدريب رياضي لللياقة - She's **doing exercise** to keep fit / strong.

9• **aged = at the age of** في عمر - He died, **aged 40** / **at the age of 40**.

• **hardly** قلما / نادرا (تنفي الجملة) - There is **hardly any** birds in this area.

• **that's why** لذلك (تبين النتيجة) - He is late. **That's why** I'm angry with him.



- **successful in / at ....** عمر / شئ - He was **successful at** a very young age.
- **too** صفة **to** مصدر .. جداً لدرجة أن لا - He's **too young to do** these games.
- **called** يُدعى / يسمى (صفة لجملة موصولة تم حذف ضمير وصلها) - She was stopped by an illness **called polio** / **which was called polio**.
- **the disabled = disabled children**      **the poor = poor people**

الصفة التى تعبر عن فئة من الناس يليها اسم أو يسبقها

- **look forward to + v-ing / noun** - I'm looking forward to **seeing my friends**.
- **do apologise** (أعتذر بشدة) صيغة تأكيد - I **do apologise** for that.

###### 10-Make ( noise ضوضاء – a complaint شكوي ) // Respond politely يرد بأدب // Remain calm

### Look as a phrasal verb

|                   |                         |                        |               |
|-------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|---------------|
| <b>look at</b>    | ينظر إلى                | <b>look into</b>       | يمعن النظر في |
| <b>look for</b>   | يبحث عن شخص أو شئ مفقود | <b>look out</b>        | يحترس         |
| <b>look up</b>    | يبحث عن معلومة فى كتاب  | <b>look up to</b>      | يحترم         |
| <b>look after</b> | يعتنى بـ                | <b>look forward to</b> | يتطلع إلى     |

- 11-electrical** كهربائى اى يتعامل مع الكهرباء ( لوصف الاعطال الاشخاص المعدات  
 - **electrical** (equipment / wires / appliances / fault / engineer / device / fuse)  
 - **electric** ( صفة ) كهربى اى يعمل بالكهرباء (لوصف الادوات والاجهزة)  
 - **electric** ( car/ washing machine /kettle /guitar /current / light/oven/iron /fan / generator / shock).  
 - **electrician** مهندس كهرباء / **I get an electrician to fix the lights.**

###### 12- need(s) to be + p.p or v (ing) يحتاج ان

-The car **needs to be mended**. = The car **needs mending**.

###### 13-collect يجمع - We need to collect information ( data ) money /collect evidence / rubbish

- **collect** يذهب لياخذ - She has gone **to collect her son from school** .

###### 14. like / unlike / as / alike / such as:

\* **like** + اسم / صفة + اسم / ضمير ((مثل - تعبر عن شئ غير حقيقى

\* He works like a machine. \* She ran like a mad dog. \* Do you still write like this?

\* **unlike** : على عكس

\* Unlike her sister, Salma is hard-working and studious. \* She has blue eyes unlike her mother.

\* **as** + وظيفة/ جملة كاملة(مثل - تعبر عن تشبيه حقيقى

\* My father works as a doctor. \* Do this experiment as I do it.

\* **train / work / act + as +** وظيفة:

\* He trained as a lawyer for three years.

###### 15 لاحظ استخدام المقطع ( full ) بمعنى ( full of ) والمقطع ( less ) بمعنى ( without )

► Hopeful – hopeless / helpful – helpless / fruitful – fruitless / harmless – harmful /

► useful – useless / careful – careless / fearful – fearless / powerful – powerless

► painful – painless / tasteful / tasteless / homeless / مشرد

► weightless / بلا وزن / endless / بلا نهاية / valueless / عديم القيمة / { priceless } لا يقدر بثمن

► driverless / بلا قائد / Horseless / بلا خيل

###### 16. and = In addition بالإضافة إلى ذلك + جملة

• We went shopping **and visited** some friends.

• We went shopping. **In addition, we** visited some friends.





Leila : Well, I don't like it when you think you're going to succeed, but, in the end, you don't. And, of course, not all of our work is exciting. We have to do **paperwork** too, you know!

-----

Woman 1: Excuse me, I'd like to **make a complaint**. My soup is cold.

Woman 2: I **do apologise**. I'll make sure you get another soup which is hot.

Old Man: I'm sorry to bother you, but the music is really loud.

Man 1: I'm sorry about that. I'll **make sure** my son **turns** the music **down**.

Old Woman: I'd like to speak to the manager, please.

Woman 3: I'm afraid she's out at the moment. Can I help you?

Old Woman: Yes, the problem is that my train is now two hours **late**. How am I going to **get home** this evening?

Woman 3: I'm sorry about that. Perhaps we can book a taxi for you.

-----

Lama: Excuse me, I'd like to **make a complaint**. My phone doesn't work.

Assistant: I **do apologise**. Perhaps we can repair it.

Hany: I'm sorry to **bother** you, but you're very tall. I can't see the play.

Man: I'm sorry about that. I'll **change places with** my wife. She is shorter.

Heba: I'd like to speak to the **manager**, please.

Waitress: I'm afraid **he's out** at the moment. Can I help you?

Heba: Yes, the problem is that my meat is **undercooked**.

Waitress: I'm sorry about that. We will give you a new meal.

### **Reading :**

#### **Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef**

Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef was a **champion in Kung Fu and won many medals** in the sport at secondary school. After a **terrible car accident**, he now has a **disability** which means he has to use a **wheelchair**. Mahmoud cannot walk again, but that has not stopped his love of sport. He decided to **practise** a sport which you can play in a wheelchair and he became very **good at wheelchair tennis**. He has **competed** in many international wheelchair tennis **competitions** and became one of the best wheelchair tennis players in Egypt. That is an amazing **achievement**, but Mahmoud has not stopped there. He also helps people who **are in wheelchairs to stay fit**, and **gives talks** to help other people **with disabilities**.

#### **Amany Ali**

Amany Ali is an Egyptian **Paralympic powerlifter** who won a **bronze medal** in the 2016 **Paralympic Games** in Brazil in 2016. Amany had an **illness called polio** when she was younger and this **affected** the **muscles** in her feet. She did not start **powerlifting** until she was 20, **although** she has always loved the sport. She **achieved** her Paralympic success in Brazil **aged 40**, and at a very difficult time. Her father died two days before the **competition**, so she wanted to win the medal for him. She also **came fourth** in the London Paralympic Games in 2012.

### Tanni Grey-Thompson

Tanni Grey-Thompson is a **British Paralympian wheelchair racer** who has a **medical condition called spina bifida**. She is **unable to walk**, so she uses a wheelchair to **get around**. Tanni first competed in the 400 metres and wheelchair basketball at the Paralympics in **Seoul** in 1988. Tanni won 16 Paralympic medals in **athletics events** from the 100 metres up to the 800 metres, including 11 gold medals. Since she retired from athletics in 2004, Tanni has worked for many different organisations which help people, especially disabled people and women, to **enjoy the benefits of sports**.

### Work-book Texts

#### Wheelchair tennis

Some **amazing athletes compete** in different sports even when they have a **disability**. For example, some play tennis **in wheelchairs**. The playing area is the same as for other tennis competitions, but the players need to have strong **muscles** in their arms to move around and to hit the ball. The best players enter the Paralympic Games, but few **achieved as much success as** Esther Vergeer, who is from the Netherlands. She won four **gold medals** between 2000 and 2012.

### Olympic sports

Many Olympic sports have always been part of the modern games, such as **cycling and swimming**. Some of the most famous Olympians are **runners** such as Usain Bolt and Mo Farah. New sports are sometimes added to the games. For example, **windsurfing** became an Olympic Sport in 1984 and **snowboarding** in 1998. Other sports are not part of the Olympic Games, for example, **powerlifting**. That means that great Egyptian **powerlifters**, like Sherif Othman, can only compete in the Paralympics.

### A campaign for the disabled

Disabled passengers **who travel by plane** often have a lot of problems. Frank Gardener, **who has used a wheelchair since 2004**, campaigns for air travel to be easier for disabled passengers. This started after he was left on a plane **which had landed at London's Heathrow Airport** for a long time because his wheelchair was lost. The owner of the plane company, **who was very sorry for what happened**, promised to help disabled passengers more in the future. But Frank says the main problem is what happens to his wheelchair, **which is often broken on long flights**.

### Dear Christine Harrison,

Thank you for your **interest** in working for our company. I am writing to **reply to** your questions. Our company already has two **disabled employees**. We do not have a lift but we have **ramps** to both of the floors in our building. All of our **staff** are trained to **support** our disabled colleagues. I **would like to know** which qualifications you have. **Could you come in** for an interview next week? **I look forward to hearing from you. Kind regards.**

Medhat Shoukry, Manager

### Video Script

To become **an award-winning Paralympian** is **an outstanding achievement**. These athletes **battle** against **physical disabilities** to prove **their strength, stamina and determination**.

Competing in the Paralympics often means a life **dedicated to training** and often requires a lot of **sacrifices** to be successful. Even simple tasks can be difficult with a disability which is why they are so inspiring.

Many Paralympians inspire people to persevere to achieve their dreams. They often **dedicate** their time to **promoting** their sport and helping young people **find opportunities to train**.

### Exercises on unit : 11 (Voc.)

#### 1 Choose two correct answers out of the five options given:

1. We should stop making.....  
a. rewards                      b. noise                      c. happiness                      d. complaints                      e. friends
2. He is good at ..... He won many awards.  
a. cycling                      b. completing                      c. weightlifting                      d. crying                      e. stealing
3. He won a gold medal in the 2021.....  
a. Races                      b. World Cup                      c. Paralympics                      d. Achievements                      e. Olympics
4. He worked hard and was able to.....great success.  
a. arrived                      b. reached                      c. activated                      d. achieved                      e. did
5. Physical and mental are.....  
a. antonyms                      b. synonyms                      c. opposites                      d. idioms                      e. collocations

#### 1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- The man looked ..... surprised when a little boy threw a stone at his car.  
a. quit                      b. quiet                      c. quietly                      d. quite
- 2- Going to school teaches children to ..... on well with other people.  
a. keep                      b. get                      c. set                      d. let
- 3- It is often completely ..... in the desert at night. You can't hear anything.  
a. noise                      b. silent                      c. noisy
- 4- They couldn't ..... their target of less than 3% inflation  
a) achieve                      b) do                      c) make                      d) affect
- 5- If you don't hurry, you will ..... your train.  
a. mess                      b. miss                      c. Miss                      d. lose
- 6- ..... cooking , my mother swept the floor.  
a. In addition                      b. As well                      c. Beside                      d. In addition to
- 7- I get on ..... with all my colleagues.  
a. well                      b. will                      c. good                      d. nice
- 8- I'm really looking forward to ..... in my new apartment.  
a. setting                      b. settling                      c. sit                      d. sat
- 9- It has been a remarkable ..... for Egypt to get rid of some economic problems.  
a) employment                      b) enrolment                      c) achievement                      d) payment
- 10- The discovery of DNA was a major scientific .....  
a. attraction                      b. achievement                      c. engagement                      d. attachment
- 11- Thousands of applicants are ..... for the same job.  
a. communicating                      b. commenting                      c. cementing                      d. competing
- 12- ..... are in need of the society's help.  
a. Disabled                      b. The disabled                      c. Disable people                      d. Disability
- 13- Some old people have ..... with seeing in the dark.  
a. dignity                      b. polygamy                      c. difficulty                      d. amazement
- 14- My grandma has ..... so much in her life. She's a doctor and has 4 children.  
a. deceived                      b. believed                      c. appreciated                      d. achieved
- 15- Most teachers spend most of their ..... as teachers.  
a. carrier                      b. porter                      c. career                      d. spirit
- 16- I saw an interesting Chinese film about some ..... fighters.  
a. Run                      b. Kung Fu                      c. Block                      d. King
- 17- We had to drive up a ..... before we drove onto the ship.  
a. rape                      b. rapist                      c. ramp                      d. tripe
- 18- Hamid won a / an ..... for helping out with a lot of different charities.  
a. reward                      b. award                      c. inward                      d. ward

- 19- Helen Keller lived a busy life before she died ..... 87 in 1968.  
a. age                      b. aged                      c. ages                      d. ageing
- 20- Winning the world cup is a remarkable .....  
a. achievement              b. failure              c. loss                      d. disappointment
- 21- Kung Fu is a Chinese sport in which people ..... with feet and hands.  
a. cooperate              b. run                      c. jump                      d. fight
- 22- Mahmoud can't walk so he has to use a .....  
a. chair                      b. seat                      c. wheel                      d. wheelchair
- 23- Before the accident, Mahmoud had been a ..... in Kung Fu.  
a. crayon                      b. capital                      c. champion                      d. champagne
- 24- A coach ..... players of a sport to do well at it.  
a. treats                      b. trains                      c. transfers                      d. translates
- 25- ....., the man who won the race only has one leg.  
a. Amazing                      b. Amazingly                      c. Amazed                      d. Amazement
- 26- We have to honour our great ..... like Mahmoud Youssef.  
a. athletics                      b. athletes                      c. athletic                      d. athletically
- 27- Ali wants to be able to ..... his own Olympic gold medal.  
a. beat                      b. gain                      c. earn                      d. win
- 28- She has overcome her ..... to become an artist.  
a. disabled                      b. unable                      c. ability                      d. disability
- 29- Ramy Ashour ..... in many international competitions.  
a. completed                      b. competed                      c. complemented                      d. complimented
- 30- Mahmoud Youssef took part in many international .....  
a. completions                      b. complaints                      c. competitions                      d. compartments
- 31- Mohamed Salah has scored the third goal in this match. How .....!  
a. amaze                      b. amazement                      c. amazingly                      d. amazing
- 32- Our teacher gave an illustrated ..... on Roman architecture.  
a. talkative                      b. taking                      c. talk                      d. talks
- 33- You should help other people ..... disabilities.  
a. in                      b. by                      c. at                      d. with
- 34- She ..... the admiration of many people in her battle against disability.  
a. beat                      b. raced                      c. won                      d. gained
- 35- Mahmoud Youssef is a ..... wheelchair tennis player.  
a. tutor                      b. top                      c. career                      d. fight
- 36- The final match will take ..... in a neutral stadium.  
a. part                      b. the place                      c. place                      d. occur
- 37- Technology can ..... blind and deaf people's lives.  
a. prove                      b. approve                      c. improve                      d. strove
- 38- He passed the exam ..... its difficulty.  
a. despite                      b. however                      c. though                      d. although
- 39- ....., this blind man has achieved great success.  
a. Credible                      b. In credible                      c. Incredible                      d. Incredibly
- 40- Mona hopes to ..... in the next Olympic Games.  
a. take                      b. participate                      c. shake                      d. form
- 41- Taha has ..... the English exam.  
a. succeeded                      b. successful                      c. passed in                      d. passed
- 42- Some people have difficulty ..... in the dark.  
a. see                      b. seeing                      c. to be seen                      d. seen
- 43- Charities help ..... to lead a good life.  
a. poor                      b. poverty                      c. the poor                      d. barren
- 44- She is an Egyptian Paralympic power ..... athlete who won a bronze medal.  
a. lifts                      b. lift                      c. lifter                      d. lifting
- 45- My neighbor had an illness ..... Polio when he was young.  
a. calls                      b. was called                      c. called                      d. calling
- 46- My brother came ..... in the running competition last week.  
a. four                      b. fourth                      c. the four                      d. for
- 47- The disabled are unable to walk, so they use wheelchair to get .....

- a. a round                      b. round                      c. around                      d. road
- 48- Tonight's programme looks back at the main ..... of the year.  
a. happenings                      b. events                      c. accidents                      d. incidents
- 49- The website has a variety of interactive exercises ..... matching games.  
a. include      b. including                      c. consist                      d. consisting
- 50- There are several ..... disabled people.  
a. success                      b. successful                      c. succeed                      d. successfully
- 51- Which of the ..... achievements do you find the most important for him?  
a. athlete's                      b. athletes'      c. athletes                      d. athlete
- 52- I met a British ..... wheelchair racer who has won a medal.  
a. Paralympic                      b. Paralympics      c. Paralympian                      d. Parallel
- 53- Giving up smoking had a magical ..... on your health.  
a. affect                      b. effect                      c. affection                      d. effective
- 54- Not being able to sleep at night is a very common .....  
a. complain                      b. complains      c. complement                      d. complaint
- 55- ..... calm and respond quietly.  
a. Make                      b. Give                      c. Remain                      d. Do
- 56- I look ..... to hearing from you soon.  
a. forward                      b. foretell                      c. forecast                      d. forbid
- 57- What will you do if the company is not ..... for you?  
a. suit                      b. match                      c. suits                      d. suitable                      d. to be practiced
- 58- They decided ..... a sport to keep fit.  
a. practice                      b. practicing                      c. to practice
- 59- She did not start ..... lifting until she was 30.  
a. energy      b. power                      c. powerful
- 60- A charity helps people ..... personally or from the media.      d. powered  
a. neither      b. other                      c. weather                      d. either
- 61- The ..... of something refer to successful and un successful times.  
a. activist      b. campaign                      c. ramp                      d. highs or lows
- 62- The best part of being a charity ..... is the possibility of improving things.  
a. active                      b. activate                      c. activity                      d. activist
- 63- Do you think that working for a charity is a ..... of time?  
a. waist                      b. wastes                      c. wasteful                      d. waste
- 64- Working for charities can really ..... a difference in your life.  
a. get                      b. give                      c. do                      d. make
- 65- My father is a ..... that all people like.  
a. celebration                      b. famous                      c. popular                      d. celebrity
- 66- The government didn't have the ..... to enforce the law.  
a. experts                      b. problem                      c. muscle                      d. lift
- 67- Kyle ..... the door open.  
a. muscled                      b. tossed                      c. threw                      d. blocked
- 68- Amanda was ..... a T-shirt with the slogan "I'm with Stupid!"  
a. sporting                      b. ironing                      c. burning                      d. chewing
- 69- Would you be a ..... and lend me some money?  
a. sport      b. fort                      c. court                      d. port
- 70- My mother used to get really ..... with me when I misbehaved.  
a. heavy                      b. navy                      c. save                      d. tyranny
- 71- The good news was a real .....  
a. lift                      b. fist                      c. bliss                      d. blest
- 72- Women were ..... for the right to vote.  
a. campaigning                      b. skipping                      c. blaming                      d. flourishing
- 73- The company hopes to boost sales by ..... up its advertising.  
a. ramping                      b. reducing                      c. deducing                      d. inducing
- 74- He finally met his ..... in the tough tennis match.  
a. compete                      b. handsome                      c. friend                      d. equal
- 75- Which portion would you like: the small, the ..... or the large?  
a. medium                      b. middle                      c. score                      d. core



- 76- They made new ..... on the road to prevent accidents.  
a. pumps      b. ramps      c. rocks      d. rockets
- 77- I searched ..... for my glasses but couldn't find them.  
a. high and down      b. high and low      c. high and back      d. high and front
- 78- The company is ..... a campaign to promote their new product.  
a. commenting      b. cultivating      c. conducting      d. contending
- 79- Children from poor families are more likely to ..... at school.  
a. under      b. underachieve      c. under below      d. beneath
- 80- Winning the gold medal was the ..... achievement of her long career.  
a. corn      b. crone      c. cunning      d. crowning
- 81- A lot of political ..... urge the youth to participate in the revolution .  
a) active      b) chemists      c) architects      d) activists
- 82- They are ..... to save the area from building development  
a) camping      b) campaigning      c) complaining      d) including
- 83- Today police launched a ..... to reduce car accidents .  
a) war      b) fire      c) campaign      d) rocket
- 84- Young children will usually ..... for their mother's attention ..  
a) compete      b) compare      c) search      d) look
- 85- He is hoping to ..... in the London Marathon.  
a) decorate      b) concentrate      c) cancel      d) compete
- 86- After the accident , he suffered from a physical ..... so he couldn't walk.  
a) disability      b) ability      c) inability      d) disabled
- 87- The government should provide the necessary facilities for the .....  
a) abled      b) unable      c) disabled      d) wealthy
- 88- The Chinese sport of ..... is a system of fighting without weapons .  
a) karate      b) kung fu      c) judo      d) bowling
- 89- A true friend is the person who stands beside you in your .....  
a) highs      b) highs and lows      c) heights      d) weights
- 90- The highlight of the Olympian is when he or she wins a gold .....  
a) cup      b) medal      c) ring      d) bracelet
- 91- The runner does tough exercise to strengthen the ..... of his leg and his feet.  
a) moustache      b) mast      c) muscles      d) mustard
- 92- Egypt should take care of individual sports such as ..... to earn more medals.  
a) hockey      b) basketball      c) volleyball      d) powerlifting
- 93- Do you think Tv advertisements put ..... on the viers to buy many products?  
a) pressure      b) effect      c) impact      d) influence
- 94- In Mecca , I have seen a special ..... for the wheelchair users to reach high places .  
a) camp      b) lamb      c) ramp      d) damp
- 95- Hady was there at the ..... of his manager.  
a) require      b) inquire      c) quiz      d) request
- 96- When she finished her letter signed ..... with " Yours , Jaanet "  
a) with      b) off      c) of      d) in
- 97- Since he was a child he has suffered a medical condition called .....bifida.  
a) spin      b) polio      c) back      d) spina
- 98- The mousque near my house is provided with twi special ..... for the disabled  
a) wheels      b) cycles      c) wheelchair      d) waterwheel
- 99- Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef was a ..... in Kung Fu and won many medals  
a) champion      b) championship      c) hero      d) leader
- 100- After a terrible accident, he now has a ..... which means he has to use a wheelchair.  
a) wonder      b) medal      c) disability      d) miracle

## Grammar

### RELATIVE CLAUSES الجمل الدالة على الصفة

- جملة الصفة : هي جملة تبدأ عادة بضمير وصل و تستخدم في تحديد اسم سابق لها

- I told you about the woman **who lives next door**.

- Do you know the girl, **who is talking to Tom**?

- ضمير الوصل : ضمير يربط بين جملتين بينهما اسم مشترك لعدم تكراره

- I bought a new car **that** is very fast.

- I'm looking for a secretary **who / that** can use a computer well.


- لاحظ أننا لا نكرر الضمير عندما نستخدم ضمير الوصل

- The woman **who** ( she ) lives across the road is a doctor.

- My uncle, **who** ( he ) was born in Hong Kong, lived most of his life overseas.

### Who - whom - which - that - whose - where - when

❖ نستخدم لربط الجمل ببعضها وتحل محل الاسم أو الضمير المكرر في الجملة الثانية .

|                 |                                                                                                  |                              |                                                                                                    |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| اسم عاقل        | <b>who</b>                                                                                       | (الذي/التي/الذين/اللاتي)     | يأتي بعدها فعل أو فاعل                                                                             |
| اسم عاقل        | <b>whom</b>                                                                                      | (الذي/التي/الذين/اللاتي)     | يأتي بعدها فاعل                                                                                    |
| اسم غير عاقل    | <b>which</b>                                                                                     | (الذي/التي/الذين/اللاتي)     | يأتي بعدها فعل أو فاعل                                                                             |
| عاقل / غير عاقل | <b>that</b> =  | (الذي/التي/الذين/اللاتي)     | يأتي بعدها فعل أو فاعل                                                                             |
| اسم مكان        | <b>where</b>                                                                                     | (حيث/حيثما) تدل على المكان   | يأتي بعدها فاعل                                                                                    |
| اس وقت / زمان   | <b>when</b>                                                                                      | (حينما/عندما) تدل على الزمان | يأتي بعدها فاعل                                                                                    |
| اسم مالك        | <b>whose</b>                                                                                     | (تدل على الملكية)            | يأتي بعدها الاسم المملوك وتحل محل ( 's / s' ) أو صفات الملكية (my - his - her - its - our - their) |
| لا يوجد اسم     | <b>what</b>                                                                                      | ما                           |                                                                                                    |

**who (that) →**

- تحل محل عاقل (فاعل أو مفعول ) او اسم مكرر في الجملة الثانية

- يمكن أن يأتي مكانها ضمير الوصل ( that ) ولا يسبقها حرف جر :

My uncle **who has** an import and export company is a businessman.

The woman **who lives** next door is friendly .

تستخدم **who** لتحل محل الفاعل أو المفعول. أما **whom** فتحل محل المفعول فقط

The woman **who was injured** in the accident is in hospital.

The boy **whom / who I wanted** to talk to was not at home.

لاحظ :- يبقى حرف الجر كما هو بعد الفعل أو يوضع قبل ضمير الوصل **whom** فقط وليس **who - that**

The men **with whom** I lived in London were honest.

That's the man **whom / who / that** you are talking about.

That's the man you are talking about.

**Which (that) →**

تستخدم **which** لتحل محل الفاعل و المفعول غير العاقل

- Huda works **for a company which / that manufactures** computers.

- **The shoes which Nadia** bought don't fit very well.

- يمكن أن تستخدم (**which**) لتشير إلى جملة كاملة سابقة لها.

- He came first, **which** made his parents very happy.

- **He was usually late, which always annoyed his father.**

- **We've missed our train, which means we may be late.**

- **Everybody worked really hard and helped tidy up at the end, which I hadn't expected at all.**

- يمكن أن تستخدم حروف الجر قبل (**which**) أو يأتي في أي مكان المناسب في الجملة

- These are the books **about which** she spoke. = - These are the books **which** she spoke **about**.

- The bus **by which** we go to school is very old = - The bus **which** we go to school by is very old.  
 - يمكن استخدام (that) بدلا من (who / which / whom)
- The **man that has been** working all day looks very tired.
- **Omer that you met** yesterday is my brother.
- The **food that you make** tastes delicious. - Reham bought a **mobile that was expensive**.  
 - لا تستخدم حروف الجر قبل (that) يل تأتي في المكان المناسب في الجملة:
- I like **the man that I work for**. - These are **the books that she spoke about**.
- The man **for that** you work is very kind. (X) - The man **that you work for** is very kind. (✓)  
 - لاحظ استخدام **that** في الحالات التالية
- I lent her **all the money that** she needed. - Wahid was **the only friend that** helped me.
- The fox **is the cleverest animal that** I have ever seen.

## where

- تستخدم (Where) بمعنى "الذي فيه أو حيث" و تعود علي المكان و لابد أن يأتي بعدها فاعل
- This is the room **where I sleep**. - A school is the place **where we learn**.
- Do you remember **the place where we** caught the train?
- Cairo **is the town where I** was born.

## where = in which / at which / to which / from which / about which

- This is the room **in which** I sleep. - A school is a place **at which** we learn.

## when

- تستخدم (When) بمعنى "الذي فيه أو عندما" و تعود علي اسم زمان و لابد أن يأتي بعدها فاعل
- 1980 is the **year when** I was born. - Friday is **the day when** we get up late.
- When = in / on / at which.....**
- Friday is **the day on which (that)** we get up late. - Six o'clock is **the time at which** I get up.
- England won the world cup in 1996. It was **the year when** we got married.
- I remember my twentieth birthday. **It was the day when** the tsunami happened.
- أحيانا نستطيع أن نحذف ضمير الوصل (when)
- England won the world cup in 1996. **It was the year we** got married.
- I remember my twentieth birthday. **It was the day my** sister travelled abroad.
- لاحظ المثال الآتي

- I don't like **August which is** very hot.

- فعل + فاعل + (where) ..... + مكان  
 أو أي حرف جر مكاني in + فعل + فاعل + (which) ..... + مكان  
 فعل + فاعل + (which) ..... + مكان
- I went to the town **where** I was born.
- I went to the town **which** I was born **in**.
- I went to the town **in which** I was born.

- فعل يحدث في هذا المكان + فاعل + (where) ..... + مكان  
 فعل لا يحدث في هذا المكان + فاعل + (which) ..... + مكان  
 فعل + (which) ..... + مكان
- This is the shop **where** I work. هذا هو المحل الذي فيه أعمل
- This is the shop **which** I drew. هذا هو المحل الذي رسمته
- This is the shop **which** is expensive. هذا هو المحل الذي يكون غالي

## in when = at which on during

- July is the month **when** we go on holiday.
- July is the month **in which** we go on holiday.

## whose

- تستخدم (whose) للملكية و تحل محل اسم متبوع بـ 's و صفات الملكية و هي  
 my / his / her / its / our / you / their

- We met **a lady whose daughter** has just got married.
- I bought **a house whose walls** were made of glass      - I bought a house with glass walls.

هناك بعض الكلمات تستخدم كفعل و اسم ، فإذا استخدمت كاسم فإنها تسبق بـ **whose**

**hope / dream / stay / work / end / likes and dislikes .....**

- **Foreigners whose stay** ended should renew it.
- **People whose work** is hard should sleep enough.

### What

- تستخدم (what) كضمير وصل بمعنى (the thing that / which)

- We'd better **decide what we** need to buy
- = We'd better decide **the thing that we need to buy**

**What we saw** astonished us.

- **What annoys him** is that his friend always comes late

### OMISSION OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS حذف ضمائر الوصل

- يتم حذف كل من (who - which - whom) عندما يحلوا محل مفعول (إذا جاء بعدهم فاعل)

- This is **the woman who** I helped. = - This is **the woman I helped**.
- يمكن حذف كل من (who - which) في الحالات التالية:
- إذا جاء بعدهما زمن مستمر وفي هذه الحالة يتم حذف الضمير و (be) ويبقى (v.ing)
- **The boy who is wearing** a red shirt is my son. = - **The boy wearing** a red shirt is my son.
- Do you see **the cat which is lying** on the roof? - Do you see **the cat lying** on the roof?
- إذا جاء بعدهم (verb to be) كفعل أساسي وهنا يتم حذف الضمير و (verb to be)
- **The woman who is in this shop**, lent me this pen. - **The woman in this shop** lent me this pen.
- **The girl who is at the supermarket** wants to buy some sweets.
- **The girl at the supermarket** wants to buy some sweets.
- يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا كان بعده (صفة + (be)).
- **The girl who was lazy** didn't go to school yesterday. - **The lazy girl** didn't go to school yesterday.
- نحذف ضمير الوصل المتبوع بفعل مبني للمعلوم ونضع الفعل في صورة (v.ing)
- I told you **about the woman who lives** next door. - I told you **about the woman living** next door.
- نحذف ضمير الوصل إذا جاء بعده فعل مبني للمجهول وهنا نحذف أيضا (verb to be) ويبقى التصريف الثالث للفعل.
- **The girl who was arrested** yesterday stole clothes from shops.
- **The girl arrested yesterday** stole clothes from shops.
- نستخدم (to + inf.) بدلا من عبارة الوصل إذا كان ضمير الوصل في الجملة يحل محل الفاعل مع كلمات مثل

**The first / second / last .....**

- I was the first person who left the ship. = - I was **the first person to leave** the ship.
- لا يمكن استخدام **that** بدلا من **which** إلا إذا وضعنا حرف الجر بعد الفعل
- The train arrived late. I came by it. - **The house by which I came** arrived late.
- **The train that I came by** arrived late.

لاحظ أن هناك نوعان من جملة الصفة

#### 1- Defining relative clause

جملة صفة محددة للاسم

- هذا النوع يعطي معلومة أساسية عن الشيء أو الشخص أو المكان الذي نتحدث عنه ونستخدم في هذا النوع **who / which / whom**
- ولا نستخدم **comma** قبل أو بعد عبارة الوصل. ويمكن استخدام **that** بدلا من ضمائر الوصل.
- She is **the woman who / that wrote** two books.
- **The woman who stole** the ring was soon arrested. (who stole the ring is essential information)
- **The man who told me** this refused to give his name.
- **The noise that he made** woke everybody up.

#### 2- Non-defining relative clause

جملة صفة غير محددة للاسم

- في هذا النوع لا تقدم جملة الصفة معلومة هامة عن الشيء أو الشخص أو المكان الذي نتحدث عنه ولا بد من استخدام **comma** قبل وبعد عبارة الوصل ولا تستخدم **that** في هذا النوع
- **Sara's mother, who works** for the national bank, always comes home late.
- **My gardener, who is very pessimistic**, says that there will be no apples this year.

**1 ) Choose the correct answer**

1. Fatma won the prize, .....surprised me a lot.  
a) where                      b) whom                      c) which                      d) who
2. The children ..... were playing football broke one of my windows.  
a) which                      b) who                      c) whom                      d) when
3. The house ..... I was born has just been demolished.  
a) whose                      b) in where                      c) in that                      d) in which
4. Fadi is the man ..... lives next door.  
a) where                      b) which                      c) who                      d) whom
5. The books ..... are on the table are mine.  
a) where                      b) who                      c) which                      d) whom
6. I can't remember the name of the person ..... I borrowed this pen.  
a) from where                      b) from which                      c) to whom                      d) from whom
7. Alfred Hitchcock ..... worked for many years in Hollywood was born in Britain.  
a) that                      b) whom                      c) which                      d) who
8. The sun is really a star..... is 93 million miles from the earth  
a) which                      b) whom                      c) who                      d) when
9. John Kennedy ..... a very famous American President died in 1963.  
a) who                      b) that                      c) who was                      d) who is
10. He has a beautiful sister ..... name I have forgotten.  
a) whose                      b) which                      c) whom                      d) that
11. Charlie Chaplin, ..... became a very rich man was from a poor family.  
a) where                      b) who                      c) that                      d) which
12. The 1992 Olympics were held in Barcelona, .....is in the north-east of Spain.  
a) which                      b) that                      c) who                      d) where
13. This is the box ..... I had put my English books.  
a) which                      b) who                      c) whom                      d) where
14. This is the box ..... I had put my English books in.  
a) which                      b) who                      c) whom                      d) where
15. The man..... she had lunch yesterday is her boss.  
a) who                      b) whose                      c) with whom                      d) whom
16. The knife ..... you are cutting the meat belonged to my great grandmother.  
a) where                      b) which                      c) with whom                      d) with which
17. The company ..... he works has gone bankrupt.  
a) for which                      b) in that                      c) in where                      d) which
18. We didn't recognize the people ..... we were looking.  
a) at which                      b) in whom                      c) at that                      d) at whom
19. I can't remember the person ..... I took the money.  
a) from whom                      b) whom                      c) who                      d) whose
20. The professor..... has recently received an award.  
a) respect                      b) I respect                      c) whom respect                      d) which I respect
21. I know the person ..... you are talking about.  
a) whose                      b) where                      c) whom                      d) when
22. The bookstore did not have the book .....  
a) wanting                      b) that wanted                      c) which wanted                      d) I wanted
23. This is the house ..... I lived when I was younger.  
a) in which                      b) which                      c) that                      d) in where
24. This is the house ..... I lived in when I was younger.  
a) which in                      b) which                      c) in that                      d) where
25. A man .....mobile was ringing did not know what to do.  
a) whose                      b) which                      c) whom                      d) that
26. I still remember the day ..... I received my first paycheck.  
a) where                      b) which                      c) in which                      d) when
27. At last, the officer ..... we were desperately waiting arrived.  
a) for whom                      b) whom                      c) who                      d) at whom
28. That was the place ..... I'd seen you before.  
a) who                      b) whose                      c) which                      d) where

29. Ali went to get the book ..... the day before.  
**a) I'd lent her b) that I'd lent her it c) which I'd lent it her d) had lent her**
30. The rain always reminded her of the city ..... she met her husband  
**a) whose b) when c) who d) where**
31. Tell me the song ..... makes you feel happiest.  
**a) who b) which c) where d) when**
32. The meeting will happen in Alex. Please e-mail a list of the lectures .....you want to attend.  
**a) what b) whose c) when d) that**
33. The man fell over in the street and it was his own sister ..... found him there.  
**a) whose b) which c) whom d) that**
34. The woman ..... son you met is distinguished lecturer.  
**a) where b) that c) whom d) whose**
35. The horse ..... the race belongs to an Irish woman.  
**a) to win b) won c) that win d) winning**
36. A woman ..... daughter was crying tried to calm her.  
**a) whose b) whose her c) who d) whom**
37. Can you name the country ..... was the birthplace of Mozart?  
**a) whose b) which c) whom d) where**
38. Can you name the country ..... Mozart was born?  
**a) where b) which c) whom d) that**
39. The factory ..... closed last week had been there for 70 years.  
**a) what b) whose c) when d) that**
40. Have you read about the schoolgirl ..... started her own business and is now a millionaire?  
**a) whose b) which c) whom d) that**
41. Maha says that the house ..... Tamer has bought has a beautiful garden  
**a) whose b) which c) whom d) where**
42. A police officer ..... car was parked at the next corner stopped and arrested them.  
**a) whose b) which c) whom d) that**
43. Lots of people walk in the park..... I jog every morning.  
**a) whose b) which c) who d) where**
44. What's the name of the river ..... goes through the town?  
**a) which b) where c) when d) who**
45. The robber stole the car ..... in front of the supermarket.  
**a) was parked b) which were parked c) which parked d) parked**
46. Do you know anybody ..... wants to buy a car?  
**a) whose b) which c) whom d) that**
47. Bill Clinton,.....was President of the USA, has only one daughter.  
**a) who b) which c) whom d) that**
48. She always asks me questions ..... are difficult to answer.  
**a) whose b) when c) which d) where**
49. The boy ..... next to me in class is very clever.  
**a) which sits b) whom sits c) sitting d) sat**
50. Show me the road ..... to the railway station.  
**a) leading b) which leading c) leads d) lead**
51. I don't like people ..... never stop talking.  
**a) who b) which c) whom d) whose**
52. Have you seen the money ..... was on the table?  
**a) when b) where c) who d) that**
53. Why does he always wear clothes ..... are too small for him?  
**a) whose b) when c) which d) what**
54. She apologized to the boy ..... glasses got broken.  
**a) where b) which c) whose d) that**
55. Christopher Columbus was the sailor ..... discovered America.  
**a) what b) whom c) who d) which**
56. The lady ..... son plays football with me is the head teacher of my school.  
**a) whose b) which c) whom d) where**
57. The house ..... I was born is now for sale.  
**a) where b) whose c) which d) whom**



58. Charles Dickens, ..... was an English author, wrote many interesting novels.  
a) what                      b) whom                      c) who                      d) which
59. London, ..... is on the river Thames, is the capital of the United Kingdom.  
a) what                      b) where                      c) who                      d) which
60. Yesterday we found a wallet..... was empty.  
a) which                      b) who                      c) whom                      d) what
- 61-My penfriend, (who - that - where - when) lives in Sweden, is studying biology at university.
- 62- We know a lot of people ..... lives are miserable.  
a) who                      b) which                      c) where                      d) whose
- 63-My brother (whom - whose - where - that) lives in New York is going to visit us soon.
- 64-Fruit (when - that - where - what) ripens on the tree tastes best.
- 65-Our flat, (which - that - whose - where) is on the fifth floor, overlooks the Nile.
- 66-My brother went to Alexandria university, (which - when - that - where) he studied architecture.
- 67-Last week, we had a meeting, ..... we found out about next year's school trip.  
a) at which                      b) for which                      c) on which                      d) by which
- 68-She's written an article ..... she describes the problems facing our country.  
a) of which                      b) with which                      c) in which                      d) in where
- 69-Dr. Aisha Abd El-Rahman, (that - who - what - where) is better known to some people as Bint El-Shatei, is one of the most famous people in Egyptian and Arab culture.
- 70-Shakespear ( which- who- whose-where ) plays are interesting , are still read by a lot of people.
- 71-She went to Cairo University..... she studied Arabic language and literature  
a) what                      b) whose                      c) at where                      d) where
- 72-She wrote many books and articles..... she argued for a more positive role for women.  
a) with whom                      b) in which                      c) of what                      d) to where
- 73- The tourists ..... visit have been wonderful, will return again.  
a) who                      b) whose                      c) where                      d) whom
- 74-Dr. Aisha, ..... father was an important man, was born in Damietta in 1913.  
a) which                      b) what                      c) where                      d) whose
- 75-Dr. Aisha wrote many articles(at which - in which - of which - which) she discussed society.
- 76-Queen Victoria, ..... was born in 1819, was educated in London alone  
a) which                      b) who                      c) that                      d) whom
- 77.This is the engineer ..... designs are so wonderful.  
a) who                      b) which                      c) whose                      d) whom
- 78-Queen Victoria, ..... died in January 1901, was queen of Britain for most of the 19th century.  
a) which                      b) what                      c) where                      d) whom
- 79-Queen Victoria,..... age name ed after her ,ruled for more than 63 years.  
a) that                      b) whose                      c) who                      d) whom
- 80-Queen Victoria's husband, died in 1861, ..... Victoria always wore black clothes.  
a) after which                      b) with which                      c) by which                      d)from which
- 81-I'm hoping to study science at university, ..... I'd like to work as a research assistant.  
a) in which                      b) what                      c) after which                      d) whom
- 82- Can the disabled ( get - bring - give - bring ) their homes without help ?
- 83-The city (that - in which - when - what) I was born is in the south of Egypt.
- 84-These days, women have as good an education as men, .....I think is a good thing.  
a) which                      b) that                      c) where                      d) whom
- 85-Yesterday, I played a long game of tennis with my brother, ..... made me very tired.  
a) which                      b) what                      c) where                      d) whom
- 86-The nurse, ..... responsibility is to look after children, has worked here for ten years.  
a) who                      b) what                      c) whose                      d) whom
- 87-The person (who - whose - which - where) does most of the cooking in is my mother.
- 88-Lord of the Flies is a story ..... a group of school boys are shipwrecked on an island.  
a)at which                      b)for which                      c)in which                      d)to which
- 89- She asked me where I had been,..... I replied, "I can 't tell you."  
a)at which                      b)for which                      c)in which                      d)to which
- 90-Tomorrow, I'm going to a meeting ..... we're going to discuss women's role in society.  
a)at which                      b)for which                      c)in which                      d)to which
- 91- They said something very cruel, .....I think they should apologise.

- a) at which      b) for which      c) in which      d) to which  
 92. Saturday,..... we always play football, is always a busy day for me.  
 a) that      b) on which      c) where      d) what  
 93. I could not decide..... to wear to the wedding party.  
 a) which      b) what      c) that      d) who  
 94. Woman's Day ..... marks an important event in 1909 is on March 8th.  
 a) whom      b) where      c) which      d) who  
 95-I met a scientist ..... discoveries are so many.  
 a) whose      b) which      c) who      d) when  
 96. My friend has bought a new T- shirt ..... of cotton.  
 a) making      b) which made      c) was made      d) made  
 97. I don't know the man ..... next to me well.  
 a) who      b) who has      c) who is      d) whom  
 98. Where can I find a book ..... about global warming.  
 a) tells      b) telling      c) which tell      d) told  
 99. Egypt, ..... is in Africa, is very rich.  
 a) who      b) which      c) where      d) when  
 100. I spent three hours studying the files ..... me.  
 a) which sent to      b) which you sent them      c) sent to      d) you sent them  
 101. Aisha, (which - whom - whose - that) father is a well-known doctor, is my best friend at school.  
 102. Taha Hussein.....works are wonderful novels, have turned into films.  
 a) which      b) whose      c) who      d) whom  
 103. The writer's work, ..... had taken up much of her personal life, is still appreciated today.  
 a) which      b) what      c) where      d) whom  
 104. The man ..... in the garden is my uncle.  
 a. he works      b. working      c. that work      d. worked  
 105- The man ..... wearing the white shirt is Ahmed's uncle.  
 a. who      b. who's      c. whose      d. that  
 106- This is the picture ..... with natural colours.  
 a. we painted it      b. which we painted it      c. painting      d. painted  
 107- It is said he was a man ..... to have the sight of an eagle and the courage of a lion.  
 a. who appeared      b. he appeared      c. that appears      d. when appears

## Skills

**1- Egypt has always been the lighthouse of science and civilisation since the dawn of history. It has a strong cultural background. Some of the greatest Arab writers, musicians and craftsmen are Egyptians.**

- a. لقد كانت مصر منارة العلم والحضارة منذ أسفل التاريخ، ولديها خلفية ثقافية قوية، وبعض أعظم الكتاب والموسيقيين والحرفيين العرب مصريون .  
 b- لطالما كانت مصر منارة للعلم والحضارة منذ فجر التاريخ، ولديها خلفية ثقافية قوية، وبعض أعظم الكتاب والموسيقيين والحرفيين العرب مصريون .  
 c. لقد كانت مصر على فترات منارة العلم والحضارة منذ فجر التاريخ، ولديها خلفية ثقافية رادعة، وبعض أعظم الكتاب والموسيقيين والحرفيين العرب مصريون  
 d. لطالما كانت مصر منارة للعلم والحضارة منذ فجر التاريخ، ولديها خلفية ثقافية قوية، وبعض أعظم الكتاب والموسيقيين والحرفيين المصريين عرب .

**2. The Egyptian youth have proved that they are able to contribute to make progress**

- ا- لقد حسن شباب مصر أنهم قادرون على المساهمة في صنع التقدم.  
 ب- لقد أثبت شباب مصر أنهم قادرون على المساهمة في صنع التقدم  
 ج- لقد أثبت شباب مصر أنهم قادرون على المساهمة في صنع المعجزات.  
 د- لقد أثبت شباب مصر أنهم غير قادرين على المساهمة في صنع التقدم

**3. A lot of businesses allow you to earn more money online by performing different activities that computers cannot do, such as analysing and rating web content.**

- a. تسمح لك الكثير من الأعمال بكسب المزيد من المال عبر الإنترنت من خلال القيام بأنشطة صعبة لا تستطيع أجهزة الكمبيوتر القيام بها ، مثل جمع بيانات محتوى الويب وتقييمها.
- b. تسمح لك الكثير من الأعمال بكسب المزيد من المال عبر الإنترنت من خلال القيام بأنشطة مختلفة لا تستطيع أجهزة الكمبيوتر القيام بها ، مثل برمجة محتوى الويب وتقديمها.
- c. تسمح لك الكثير من الأعمال بممارسة المزيد من الهوايات عبر الإنترنت من خلال القيام بأنشطة مختلفة لا تستطيع أجهزة الكمبيوتر القيام بها ، مثل تحليل محتوى صفحة علي الانترنت وتقييمها.
- d. تسمح لك الكثير من الأعمال بكسب المزيد من المال عبر الإنترنت من خلال القيام بأنشطة مختلفة لا تستطيع أجهزة الكمبيوتر القيام بها ، مثل تحليل محتوى صفحة علي الانترنت وتقييمها

**4- One should not learn a foreign language merely to achieve an immediate professional or academic aim and then give it up. We should carry on learning it as it is a valuable experience that enriches our life.**

- a. لا ينبغي للمرء أن يتعلم لغة أجنبية لمجرد تحقيق هدف مهني أو أكاديمي فوري ثم التوقف عن ذلك، بل يجب أن نستمر في تعلمها لأنها تجربة قيمة تثرى حياتنا
- b. لا ينبغي للمرء أن يتعلم لغة أجنبية لمجرد تحقيق هدف مهني أو أكاديمي فوري ثم التخلي عنه . يجب أن نستمر في تعلمه لأنه تجربة قيمة تثرى حياتنا .
- c. -ألا ينبغي للمرء أن يتعلم لغة أجنبية لمجرد تحقيق هدف مهني أو أكاديمي فوري ثم الإقلاع عنه . يجب ألا نستمر في تعلمها لأنها تجربة قيمة تثرى حياتنا .
- d. -لا ينبغي للمرء أن يتعلم لغة أجنبية لمجرد تحقيق هدف مهني أو أكاديمي فوري ثم التخلي عنه، بل يجب أن نستمر في تعلمها لأنها تجربة غير ذات قيمة تثرى حياتنا .

**Choose the best translation:**

١- إن إصلاح التعليم ضرورة ملحة حتى نواكب المتغيرات العالمية الحديثة.

- a)The form of Education is a mist to cope with the modern global changes
- b)The form of Education is a must to cup with the modern global changes
- c)The form of Education is a must to cope with the modern global changes
- d)The form of Education is a must to scope with the modern global changes

٢- لقد كانت مصر دائماً شامخة على مر تاريخها، وستظل كذلك أبداً الدهر بأبنائها، ولن تخضع لأحد مهما تكون الأسباب .

- a. Egypt has always been great throughout its history. It will be so forever through its citizens. It will not submit to anyone, whatever the reasons are.
- b. Egypt has been great throughout its history. It will be so forever though its citizens. It will not submit to anyone, whatever the reasons are.
- c. Egypt has always been great throughout its date. It will be so forever through its citizens. It will not submit to anyone, whatever the reasons are.
- d. Egypt has always been great throughout its history. It will be such forever through its citizens. It will not submit to anyone, whatever the reasons are.

3.بالإضافة الى الاهتمام بتطوير البنية التحتية وإنشاء العديد من المشروعات القومية ، تنفذ الحكومة المصرية سياسة إصلاح اقتصادي طويلة الأمد ، ومن المتوقع أن نستمتع بنتائج تلك السياسة في المستقبل القريب

- a. In addition to the interest in developing infrastructure and establishing many private projects, the Egyptian government hopes for a short-term social reform policy. It is expected that we will enjoy the results of this policy in the near future.
- b. In addition to the interest in developing infrastructure and establishing many national projects, the Egyptian government is implementing a long-term economic reform policy. It is expected that we will enjoy the results of this policy in the near future.
- c. In addition to the interest in developing infrastructure and establishing many investment projects, the Egyptian government is planning for a long term scientific reform policy. It is thought that we will enjoy the results of this policy in the near future.
- d. In addition to the interest in developing infrastructure and establishing many national projects, the Egyptian government is implementing a long-term scientific reform policy. It is accepted that we will enjoy the results of this policy in the near future.

**4. Choose the correct translation:**

**The government adopts a sustainable development strategy, which represents a roadmap for achieving the dreams and aspirations of Egyptians in a dignified life.**

- a. تتبنى الوزارة استراتيجية تنمية مؤقتة تمثل خارطة طريق لتحقيق أحلام وتطلعات الموظفين المصريين في حياة كريمة في كل أنحاء البلد.
- b. تتبنى الحكومة استراتيجية تنمية مستدامة تُمهّد الطريق لتحقيق أحلام وتطلعات المصريين في حياة كريمة في كل أنحاء البلد.
- c. لقد تبنت الحكومة استراتيجية تنمية مستدامة تمثل خارطة طريق لتحقيق أحلام وتطلعات المصريين في حياة كريمة في كل أنحاء الريف.
- d. تتبنى الحكومة استراتيجية تنمية مستدامة تمثل خارطة طريق لتحقيق أحلام وتطلعات المصريين في حياة كريمة.

## Chapter 11

**Jim Hawkins:**

The pirates walked in through the door. One of the men was holding a piece of paper, and he nervously walked forward to give it to **Silver**.

**Silver** read it. "So, I'm not the captain now, is that it?" he said. "Can I have the torch for a minute, so I can read it better?"

"Don't try your tricks on us," said one of the pirates, called **George**.

"I'm still the captain until you tell me why I shouldn't be," said **Silver**.

"We can tell you," said **George**. "First, your plans haven't worked. Second, you let **Trelawney** and his men leave the fort, and we're sure that they have a plan. Third, you wouldn't let us follow them. And fourth, there's the boy!"

"Is that all?" asked **Silver**. "That's enough, isn't it?" said **George**.

"I'll answer each reason," said **Silver**. "First, who didn't do what I asked them to do? **Anderson**, **Hands** and you, **George**! If we are arrested when we return to England, it is because of those people! Second, we have a doctor on the island. He's important because some of us are very ill at the moment. The doctor and I came to an agreement so that he would help us. And the boy? He'll be useful if we need to negotiate. And what about reason three? Well, this is why we didn't follow them!" he continued, and showed them the treasure map. I was very surprised and I did not understand why the doctor had given the map to him. The pirates, however, looked at it with wonder.

"That's **Flint's** map!" said **George**. "But how are we to take his treasure home if we don't have a ship?"

"Listen, **George**," said **Silver**. "You lost my boat, but I can find the treasure. So, who should be captain now?"

"**Silver's** right," said **Morgan**, and the other pirates agreed. **Silver** was still the captain. The pirates now seemed happy, except for **George**. **Silver** made him guard the fort all night while the other men laughed and sang. I lay down and thought about **Silver**. I understood that he was very clever. He knew how to be friends with all the pirates, at the same time as only thinking about himself. He would do and say anything to stay safe.

The next morning, a voice woke us all up (and I mean all of us, even **George**, the guard). It was **Dr Livesy** calling us. I was very happy to hear him, but also worried. I had left my friends and now I was with **Silver's** gang. What would **Dr Livesy** think?

"Good morning, Doctor," said **Silver**. "Come in! **George** will open the door for you. We've got a surprise for you, too!"

"Do you mean Jim?" asked **Dr Livesy**. He looked surprised as he came near us.

"That's right," said **Silver**. The doctor did not speak for some time. Then he said,

"Let me see your patients." He walked into the fort and, with a small nod to me, walked up to the ill pirates. He talked to them as if they were any English patient, although he knew they were all dangerous men. "I hope you took your

medicine?" he said to **George**. "Yes, sir, I did," he replied.

"Good, because now I'm a pirate's doctor, I want to keep you all healthy so we can get you back to England for trial," he said.

The pirates looked at each other but they said nothing.

"Dick doesn't feel well," said **Morgan**. "Let me look at you," the doctor replied.

"Yes, you have malaria. That's what happens when you sleep outside on an island like this. I'm surprised that a clever man like **Silver** didn't realise."

He gave Dick some medicine, then said, "Now I'd like to talk to the boy, please."

"No!" said **George**.

"Be quiet!" shouted **Silver**. "Doctor, you've been kind to help us with our medicine, so you can talk to the boy. But first he must promise not to run away."

I agreed. "Good. Now you can go outside, doctor, and you can talk to the boy through the window. He can stay inside," said **Silver**. When the doctor went outside, the other pirates told **Silver** that they were not happy that the doctor could talk to me. **Silver** reminded them they did not know where the treasure was yet. They needed my help, and perhaps the doctor's help as well, until the time was right.

**Silver** took me to a window where I could talk to the doctor. When he knew the pirates could not hear, he spoke to the doctor, but he sounded different.

"Tell the others that I helped you, doctor," he said. "The boy will tell you how I saved him, too. If you help me, you will also help the boy stay safe."

"I think you're frightened!" said **Dr Livesy**. "I'm not frightened," said **Silver**, "but I know you're a good man and you'll see the good in me. Now I'll let you and Jim talk." **Silver** walked away and sat down, where he could not hear us. "Jim, what happened? Why did you leave us when we needed you?" the doctor asked me. I felt very bad and started to cry. "I'm sorry, doctor! I was wrong. They were going to kill me, but **Silver** saved me. I must stay here now." "No," said the doctor. "You can't stay here. One jump and you're out of the fort, and we can run." "I can't," I said. "**Silver** trusts me now. But if they hurt me, I will have to tell them where the ship is. Because I got the ship! It's in the north of the island, half on a beach."

"You've got the ship!" said the doctor. I quickly told him my story.

"You've saved our lives many times on this journey," said the doctor. He then turned to **Silver**. "It'll be dangerous to look for that treasure, **Silver**," he said. "Don't try to find it." "But I can only save my life and the boy's life if I find it," **Silver** replied. "OK, then keep the boy close to you. If you need help, shout. Goodbye, Jim," he said, and left the fort. "We can look for the treasure now, Jim," said **Silver**. "You stay close to me. We'll look after each other."

### Questions and answers:

1. Why does Jim think that Silver would do or say anything to stay safe?

- Because he has seen him do this many times.

2. Why do you think Dr Livesy agree to let Silver look for the treasure?

- I think he probably has a plan.

3. Why do you think George was still angry after Silver answered the pirates' questions?

- Because he wanted to be the captain instead of Silver. He probably thinks Silver and Jim are planning something too.

4. Why do you think the pirates wanted Jim to be the leader?

- As he had the ship.

5. Why did Dr livesy think that Silver was frightened?

- He he lost the ship and the pirates wouldn't follow him.

**6. Why do you think Jim decided to stay with the pirates?**

- As Silver trusted him so it would be useful to stay with them.

**7. Silver decided to keep Jim safe. Why?**

- To help each other until they find the treasure.

**8. How do you think Silver persuaded the pirates to keep him the captain?**

- As he showed them the map of the treasure.

**9. Dr Livesy agreed to let Jim stay with Silver? Why do you think?**

- I think he probably wanted to keep Jim safe.

**10. Why do you think that Silver made George guard the fort all night?**

- To punish him for thinking to be the leader of the pirates.

**11. Dr Livesy pretended that he didn't care about Jim? Do you think he was right?**

As he didn't want silver to know he was worried about Jim.

**12. Why do you think Dr Livesy looked after the ill pirates?**

- He said he wants them to be well so he can take them to England for trial.

**13. How do you know that Silver was clever? Or Silver was persuasive. Explain.**

- Because he could keep the pirates on his side.

**14. Do you think Dr Livesy loved Jim. Explain.**

- As he made Silver promise him to look after him.

**Test unit eleven****1 Choose two correct answers out of the five options given:**

1. Hospitals should be provided with.....for the disabled

- a. ladders                      b. stairs                      c. ramps                      d. lifts                      e.steps

2. A-An .....is something good that you have made or got.

- a. department                      b. achievement                      c. movement                      d. prize                      e.punishment

**1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1- Taking part in the ----- is a unique opportunity for all athletes

- a. Olympics                      b.school competition                      c. dicussion                      d. wildlife

2- The disabled who use wheelchairs can go to high floors sing the.....

- a. stairs                      b. ladders                      c. ramp                      d. room

3- My friend can't ----- this heavy weight easily.

- a. rise                      b. lift                      c. high                      d. climb

4- This athlete came third and won the bronze -----

- a. cup                      b. glass                      c. plate                      d. medal

5- The boy lived lonely life because he suffered from ----- He couldn't move

- a. polio                      b. headache                      c. ache                      d. colic

6- The most important ----- was our qualification to the world cup.

- a) contribution                      b) achievement                      c) advance                      d) progress

7- The factory ..... my father has worked for twenty years is going to be closed.

- a. which                      b. when                      c. whose                      d. where

8- Adel Imam is the actor ..... plays are watched all over the Arab world.

- a. which                      b. who                      c. whose                      d. whom

9- The actress , ..... played the main role in the film ,wasn't right for the part.

- a. that                      b. which                      c. whose                      d. who

10- February is the month ..... I was born .

- a. which                      b. when                      c. where                      d. where

11- The jockeys and the horses ..... took part in the race were fantastic .

- a. that                      b. which                      c. whose                      d. who

12- Ted Hughes about ..... you read loved the children dearly

- a. that                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. who

13-The players shpuld ( compete -fight -quarrel -argue)with each other honourably amd honestly.

14- My friend is an ( Olympian -honest -honourable – activist) who wants to change every thing in the country

15-When you finish typing your email , you should ( type - resign -sign –sin) off.

16- ( Work hard -Works hard -Worked hard - Working hard) leads to success.



**2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

It is often said in guidebooks that Egypt is the gift of the Nile. The Ancient Egyptians certainly must have believed this. Where else did their food come from except the rich black mud brought by the river during the annual floods? How could they transport their huge blocks of stone and their enormous statues? On the flood water of the Nile.

However, since the river is now controlled in Egypt by the High Dam at Aswan, there is no longer a flood every year as there used to be in the past. There are some people who see the High Dam as a mixed blessing. One disadvantage is that the Nile no longer brings the mineral-rich mud which used to feed the soil. By the year 2025, Egypt will suffer from shortage of water.

As the population grows, so more people will need water for drinking, washing, etc. At the same time, more water will also be needed to irrigate land in the desert to provide a suitable environment for the growing population. So what can be done? Water can be re-cycled, that is to say, some waste water can be purified and re-used. Engineers can also search for more water underground. However, the Nile will always remain the major source of water for the country. Yet, the river upon which Egypt relies begins thousands of kilometres to the south, and is shared by other countries in Africa. Both Egypt and Sudan receive water from sources in Ethiopia, Kenya, Uganda, Zaire, Rwanda and Burundi. What would happen if these decided they needed more of water from the Nile? The answer is co-operation. Agriculture in Egypt depends almost entirely on irrigation, as there is hardly any rain. This is not true of some of the other Nile states, such as Uganda. Dams could therefore be built in these countries to provide water storage for Egypt at the same time, to provide a source of energy. Efforts could also be made to reduce the large loss. These are issues which will concern all the countries of the Nile in the next century in order to ensure that there is enough water for everyone.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :**

1. By the year 2025, Egypt will suffer from ( lack-increase-growth-rise ) of water.
2. Other Nile basin countries depend on (the Nile- wells-rain- recycled) water agriculture
3. Nile basin countries are ( 7 - 8- 6- 4 ) in number.
4. The High ( wall - Dam - Fence - Building ) protects Egypt from floods.
5. Nile basin countries need dams to ..... .  
a) irrigate their field    b) generate electricity    c) transport blocks of stone    d) store water
6. The underlined word " **these** " refers to( Engineers- Floods- Nile states- shortage of water)
7. What could be done to improve the water supply from the Nile?  
a) use it    b) waste it    c) recycle it    d) cycle it
8. Do you think The High Dam has brought only good things?  
a) Yes , of course    b) definitely    c) I don't know    d) No , it has demerits , too

**4-Choose the right translation:****1. Religions and civilizations dialogue opens the door to close the gap between western and eastern culture.**

ا- يفتح محادثة الديانات و الحضارات الباب لانهاء الفجوة بين الثقافة الشرقية و الغربية

ب- يفتح حوار الديانات و الحضارات الباب لتوسيع الفجوة بين الثقافة الشرقية و الغربية

ج- يفتح حوار الديانات و الحضارات البوابة بين الثقافة الشرقية و الغربية -

د- يفتح حوار الديانات و الحضارات الباب لانهاء الفجوة بين الزراعة الشرقية و الغربية

**2- إن تحديد النسل و تنظيم الأسرة يؤدي إلى رفع مستوي المعيشة ووضع حد لمشاكلنا الحالية**

- a) Birth control and family planning will lead to rise living standard and put an end to our current problems.
- b) Birth control and family planning will lead to raising living standard and put an end to our currant problem.
- c) Birth control and family planning will lead to raising living standard and put an end to our current problems.
- c) Birth control and family planning will lead to raising living standard and puting an end to our current problems.

**The novel**

1. Do you admire Silver's character ? Why?
2. In your opinion, why did the doctor give the map to Silver?
3. Silver is a good negotiator .Illustrate.

**4-Write an essay of one hundred words one one of the following      Pollution**

# Unit Twelve

## Vocabulary

# Hard work

العمل الجاد

By: Mr B.M. Ghreeb

|                         |                     |                   |               |                    |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| weaver                  | نساج                | fireplace         | مدفأة         | rather than        | ليس                 |
| alone                   | بمفرده              | surprised         | مدهش          | other than         | غير                 |
| engaged                 | مخطوب               | return            | يعود          | abandon            | يُهجر               |
| engagement              | خطوبة               | prove             | يثبت          | warehouse          | مستودع              |
| take care of            | يعني                | unpleasant        | كراهية        | divide             | يقسم                |
| appear                  | يظهر                | customer          | زبون          | equally            | بمساواة             |
| disappear               | يختفي               | stay up           | يسهر          | ensure             | يضمن                |
| guilty                  | مذنب                | careless          | مهمل          | legend             | أسطورة              |
| guilt                   | ذنب                 | character         | شخصية         | crime              | جريمة               |
| marry                   | يتزوج               | pace              | سرعة الاحداث  | puzzle             | لغز                 |
| instead of              | بدلاً من            | page turner       | كتاب مثير     | monster            | وحش                 |
| earn                    | يكسب                | plot              | حكمة رواية    | take place         | يحدث                |
| hide                    | يخفي                | theme             | موضوع         | pale               | شاحب                |
| gold                    | ذهب                 | moral             | مغزي          | compare            | يقارن               |
| solve                   | يحل                 | recommend         | يوصي          | argument           | جدال                |
| mystery                 | سر                  | lonely            | وحيد          | in a hurry         | مستعجل              |
| mysterious              | غامض                | happiness         | سعادة         | notice             | يلاحظ               |
| cottage                 | كوخ                 | adopt             | يتبنى         | carpet             | سجادة               |
| go wrong                | يتعطل               | lie               | يرقد - تقع    | ground             | الارض               |
| bear                    | دب                  | distant           | بعيد          | cave               | كهف                 |
| review                  | مقالة               | shape             | شكل           | point              | يشير                |
| structure               | تشيد                | lake              | بحيرة         | smile              | يتسم                |
| pharaoh                 | فرعون               | therapist         | طبيب نفسي     | useless            | غير مفيد            |
| bury                    | يدفن                | attach            | يلتحق بـ      | skeleton           | هيكل                |
| machinery               | الات                | efficiently       | بكفاءة        | look pale and thin | يبدو شاحباً ونحيفاً |
| relationship            | علاقة / صلة / قرابة | pirate            | قرصان         | special skill      | مهارة خاصة          |
| artificial intelligence | الذكاء الصناعي      | traditional parts | أجزاء تقليدية | lie                | يقع - يوجد          |
| working conditions      | ظروف العمل          | fisherman         | صياد /        | carpet             | سجادة               |
| lonely lives            | حياة ملبنة بالوحدة  | Egyptian legend   | اسطورة مصرية  | archaeologists     | علماء آثار          |
| surprises / actions     | مفاجآت / أفعال      | crazy             | مجنون         | twist / wool       | يلوى - يلف / صوف    |

## Definitions

|           |                                         |        |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------|--------|
| character | One of the people in a story.           | شخصية  |
| disappear | to become impossible to find.           | يختفي  |
| guilty    | a person who did something bad.         | مذنب   |
| mystery   | something unknown.                      | لغز    |
| solve     | to find the answer.                     | يحل    |
| engaged   | to be in a relationship to get married. | مخطوبة |
| weaver    | a person who makes cloth.               | نساج   |
| pace      | how fast the story moves.               | وتيره  |

|                    |                                 |                 |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>page-turner</b> | a book which is very exciting.  | كتاب شيق        |
| <b>plot</b>        | the story of a book.            | حبكه            |
| <b>theme</b>       | the idea or moral in the story. | الفكرة الرئيسيه |

### Expressions

|                               |                         |                                    |                      |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>take care of</b>           | يهتم بـ                 | <b>look after</b>                  | يعتنى بـ             |
| <b>care about / for</b>       | يهتم بـ                 | <b>finish reading</b>              | ينتهي من القراءة     |
| <b>full off = filled with</b> | ملئ بـ                  | <b>Be guilty of</b>                | مذنب بـ              |
| <b>join in</b>                | يتحد / يشارك            | <b>Be engaged to</b>               | مخطوبة لـ            |
| <b>lose money</b>             | يفقد مال                | <b>Be engaged in</b>               | منغمس / مشارك في     |
| <b>angry with</b>             | غضبان من                | <b>Be married to</b>               | متزوج لـ / من        |
| <b>happy with</b>             | مسرور من                | <b>Be sorry about</b>              | أسف بشأن             |
| <b>forget about</b>           | ينسى ما يتعلق بـ        | <b>feel sorry for</b>              | يشعر بالحزن لأجل     |
| <b>belong to</b>              | يخص / ينتمي لـ          | <b>friendly to</b>                 | صديق / ودود مع       |
| <b>compared to</b>            | مقارنة بـ               | <b>run away from</b>               | يفر / يهرب / يفلت من |
| <b>go wrong</b>               | تسير الأمور بشكل خاطئ   | <b>different to (from)</b>         | مختلف عن             |
| <b>a bag of money</b>         | كيس نقود                | <b>recommend</b> فلان <b>to</b> شئ | ... يرشح ... لـ      |
| <b>live alone</b>             | يعيش وحده               | <b>point out</b>                   | يبين                 |
| <b>as much ... as he can</b>  | على قدر الإمكان         | <b>point at / to</b>               | يشير الي             |
| <b>make notes</b>             | يدون ملاحظات            | <b>earn money</b>                  | يكسب مال             |
| <b>do a puzzle</b>            | يحل لغز / فزرة          | <b>guilty of robbery</b>           | مذنب بالسرقة         |
| <b>do practice</b>            | يتمرن / يؤدي تمرين      |                                    |                      |
| <b>campaign for</b>           | بدير حملة لـ            | <b>pace of reform</b>              | وتيرة الاصلاح        |
| <b>adopt a project</b>        | ينبني مشروع             | <b>Spinning and weaving</b>        | الغزل والنسيج        |
| <b>solve a crime</b>          | يجد حل لجريمة           | <b>steal the gold</b>              | يسرق الذهب           |
| <b>explain a mystery</b>      | يفسر سر غامض            | <b>pacemaker</b>                   | منظم ضربات القلب     |
| <b>tell a story</b>           | يحكى قصة / حكاية        | <b>get a good grade</b>            | يحصل على درجة جيدة   |
| <b>bring ... back</b>         | يُعيد .....             | <b>adopt a girl</b>                | يتبنى فتاة           |
| <b>feel confused</b>          | يشعر بالارتباك / الحيرة | <b>break a rule</b>                | يخالف قاعدة          |

### Synonym & antonyms

| Word      | Synonym     | Antonym                     |                                 |
|-----------|-------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Disappear | يختفي       | vanish / die (out)          | appear / survive                |
| Abandoned | هجر         | deserted / empty            | occupied / inhibited            |
| Mystery   | لغز         | secrecy / ambiguity         | certainty / assurance / trust   |
| Earlier   | مبكرا       | former / previous / prior   | later / subsequent / afterward  |
| Guilty    | مذنب        | responsible / convicted     | innocent / righteous / virtuous |
| Prove     | يثبت        | confirm / test / determine  | disprove / confuse / refute     |
| Recommend | يوصي - يرشح | advise / suggest / advocate | warn / oppose / reject          |
| Full      | كامل        | complete / satiated         | empty / partial / short         |
| Married   | متزوج       | wedded / spliced            | single                          |
| Hide      | يخفي        | cover / protect / withhold  | reveal / confess / unveil       |
| Engage    | يشغل        | employ / occupy / draw      | withdraw / ignore / release     |
| Solve     | يحل         | answer / explain            | complicate / confuse / miss     |
| Pleasant  | مبهج        | charming / acceptable       | unpleasant / offensive / awful  |
| Confused  | مرتبك       | puzzled / distracted        | clear / organized / enlightened |

**Language Notes**

- 1• hard (adj.)** كصفة (صعب / صلب / تشييط) - **Iron is a hard material.**  
 - There were a lot of **hard questions** in the exam. - He is **a hard student**.  
 • **hard (adv.)** باجتهاد (تأتي بعد الفعل لوصفه) - **He studied hard.**  
 • **hardly (adv.) = almost no** بالكاد / تقريبا (تدل على النفي)  
 تأتي قبل الفعل الأساسي و غالبا يسبقها **can / could** أو يليها **ever**  
 - I **could hardly** hear her at the back. - We **hardly ever** go to concerts.

- 2• steal** يسرق شئ / يسرق بدون مفعول - **The thief stole my money.**  
 • **rob** يسرق من مكان / من شخص - **A gang robbed the bank yesterday.**  
 • **rob .... of .....** يجرّد شخص من شئ - **They robbed him of his money.**

- 3• other than = except for** ما عدا  
 - The form cannot be signed by anyone **other than** yourself.  
 • **rather than = in preference to / instead of** بدلا من - مفضلا شيء على آخر  
 - I think I'd like to stay at home this evening **rather than** go out.  
 • **otherwise = or** وإلا - تستخدم في التهديد والتحذير  
 - You'll have to go now, **otherwise** you'll miss your bus.

- 4• alone** بمفرده (دون مساعدة من أحد) - **He carried the stone alone.**  
 • **lonely** وحيدا (يشعر بالوحدة) (معنوياً) - **Despite his friends, he feels lonely.**

- 5• sleep** ينام (فعل) - **I always sleep at 12 at night.**  
 • **sleepy** منعوس - **While I was watching the film, I felt sleepy.**  
 • **asleep** نائم (صفة) - **The baby is asleep.**  
 • **fall asleep** يغلبه النوم - **While I was watching the film, I fell asleep.**  
 • **fast asleep** مستغرق في النوم - **He is fast asleep, He doesn't move.**  
 • **sleeping** صفة لغير العاقل - **The train has sleeping rooms / carriages.**

- 6• all the village = the whole village** كل القرية  
 • **start / begin + v-ing – to + inf.** يبدأ  
 • **Obj. + am / is / are + p.p** مضارع بسيط مبني للمجهول  
 - **Silas's gold is found and returned to him.**

**7-Work as a phrasal verb**

|                       |                            |                            |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>work on</b>        | يصنع أو يصلح أو يحسن الشئ  | <b>work up</b>             | يحسن أو يطور أو ينمي |
| <b>work on</b>        | يحاول أن يقتنع الشخص       | <b>work ( himself ) up</b> | يتضايق أو يغضب       |
| <b>work in / into</b> | يمزج                       | <b>work for</b>            | يعمل لحساب           |
| <b>work out</b>       | يحل - يحسب - يتدرب بانتظام | <b>work in someone's</b>   | يعمل لصالح - يفيد    |

- 8- Alone** بمفرده **My friend is sitting alone**

- **lonely** وحيد **He feels lonely // loneliness** عزلة

- 9- Lie** يرقد ( lay – lain ) - **lie** يكذب ( lied – lied ) - **lay** تضع – تبيض ( laid – laid )

- 10- See / hear / watch notice** مفعول ( ing ) - **I saw the thief breaking into the house.** من المنتصف  
 - **See / hear / watch notice** مفعول ( inf ) - **I saw the thief break into the house.** من البداية

**LISTENING**

Woman: Hello, **husband**! Come and sit down, and I will **get you some water**.

Man : Look! It's eight o'clock at night and Silas Marner **is still working**!

Woman: He must have got another new **customer**.

Man : Yes, **that must be why** he's working so late. I don't understand why he always works so much.

Woman: He might have **lost a lot of money while he was living in the north**.

Man : But all his customers are so **happy with** the things he makes. He **can't have lost money**. I've heard that he could stop working now if he wanted to — he's got bags and **bags full of gold coins**.

Woman: Really? I just don't really like **weavers**. I think weaving is a very strange job to have. Why can't he work as a farmer or a fisherman **instead of working with these crazy** new machines?

Man : I know what you mean. What is happening to the world today? Soon there won't be any jobs for people like us who don't want anything to **do with** these machines.

**Books' Reviews**

Boy: This book is about people living on a farm near a small village in the **mountains**. The theme is how life in a village is changing in the **modern world**. The **pace** is very slow and it is **quite sad** because many **traditional parts** of their life will never be the same again. But it is beautiful to read and I enjoyed it.

Girl: This book is very **funny**! It is about a family who drive **across the country** for a holiday. They have to return their car to the airport before the end of the day. The plot is full of things that **go wrong**! The car is stopped by **a bear**, and they meet a lot of **strange people**. My favourite **character** is **a police officer** who is not very good at his job! I **laughed** a lot and would recommend this book.

**Reading :**

Silas Marner Silas Marner is a **weaver** who lives in the village of Raveloe in England. The other people in the village aren't very **friendly** to Silas because he's new to the village and he lives **alone**.

Fifteen years earlier, Silas had been **engaged** to be married to a girl called Sarah. One day, while Silas was **taking care of** a friend who was sick, a bag of money **disappeared** from under the friend's bed.

A man called William Dane finds the **empty bag** and Silas's friends decide that he is **guilty of stealing** the money. Later, William marries Sarah **instead**, and Silas decides to **move to the village** of Raveloe. The only thing he **cares about** is his work as a weaver. All Silas wants to do is work as hard as he can to **earn as much money** as he can. The richest man in Raveloe, Squire Cass, has two sons: Dunstan and Godfrey. The two sons have their **own problems** which they **hide** from their father and they always want to have more money.

One night, **a bag of gold** is stolen from Silas's house and **the whole village joins in** to look for it. The **local people feel sorry for** him and are **more friendly to him**. Silas is angry and wants to **solve the mystery**.

One evening, Silas returns to his **cottage** and finds a small girl sleeping near the fireplace. The girl is cold and hungry. Silas thinks something must have happened to her parents. They **might have had** an accident. He decides to **look after** her. He **calls** her Eppie. The other people in the village are surprised, but they think that Silas **can't be** a bad person because he wants to look after the girl. They also help him. Silas is now happier. He **realises**

that his new daughter is more **important** to him than gold. When Eppie is eighteen, Silas's gold is found and returned to him.

It was Dunstan who took the money all those years ago because he did not want to ask his father for money. Godfrey is sorry about what his brother did and thinks Silas must be **angry with** him. He and his wife offer to look after Eppie. However, Eppie wants to stay with Silas.

Silas decides to return to his old village with Eppie. He wants to **prove** that he wasn't guilty of stealing all those years earlier. When he arrives, he finds that everything has changed and he can't find anyone that he used to know. Silas feels that he can now **forget** about this **unpleasant** part of his history and he returns happily to Raveloe.

### **Which reader liked the book more?**

Ismail : I had to read Silas Marner when I was at school and I didn't enjoy it very much **then**. **However**, I've just finished reading it again and I liked it a lot more. It's a long book, although it isn't as long as Eliot's other books. The **pace** was **quite fast** and the **plot is full of surprises**. I couldn't stop reading because I really wanted to know what was going to happen to these **wonderful characters**. I would **recommend this book to anyone** who enjoys **mystery** stories.

Nadia : This is a very **interesting story** of a sad and **lonely** man who finds **happiness** when he **adopts** a girl. It isn't a **page-turner**, but I liked the way Eliot used the **theme of community**. She shows us how some people, like Silas, can **feel like** they don't **belong to** their community but **events** can bring them back into it. However, I think the novel is too long. The story of Silas Marner might have worked better as a short story **rather than** a novel.

### **What happened to the gold?**

Last week, three people, John, Jake and Jane, found gold in an **abandoned warehouse**. They agreed to **share it equally**. Jane found some boxes and put all the gold in one. John **checked** to see if anyone else was **close**. John and Jake took it to a house to **divide** it. Jane went to **ensure** they had bags for the gold. When she arrived, she opened the box, but it was full of **stones** and all the gold was gone. What happened to the gold?

### **Weavers in the countryside**

The story of Silas Marner begins in the English **countryside** in the early years of the nineteenth century. There were only a few weavers in the countryside, and they usually looked **pale** and thin **compared to** the people who worked in the fields. These people didn't **trust** anyone who was clever and they didn't like anyone who had seen the world outside their small village. Weavers had a special skill and they usually came from large towns, so they often lived **lonely lives**.

### **Three Famous Mysteries**

1. **Cleopatra VII** died in around 30 **BCE**. The famous writer, Plutarch, described the beautiful place where she was **buried**. However, although **archaeologists** have found much older **pharaohs**, nobody knows where Cleopatra lies today. In 2010, a famous archaeologist **called** Zahi Hawass found many things from Cleopatra's time at Taposiris Magna, near Alexandria, but he did not find Cleopatra.
2. **Oak Island** is on the east **coast** of Canada. People believe that a **pirate** called Captain William Kidd stole some treasure and buried it **on the island** in the seventeenth century.



He wanted to **go back** to the island to get his treasure, but he never returned. **Since that time**, hundreds of people have **tried to find the treasure, without success**.

3. **Loch Ness** is a very **deep lake** in the north of Scotland. Since the seventh century, people have seen a large, **strange** animal that lives in the deep water of the lake. They call it the Loch Ness **Monster**. Some people have even taken photos of a distant shape that could be the monster. However, scientists have studied the lake and they have not found anything **unusual**. But people still believe that something lives in the lake.

### Video Script

One hundred and sixty years ago, hard work would have looked very different for **an ordinary person**. **Manual labour** could be very difficult; the **machinery** was often heavy and dangerous to **operate**, and working **conditions** were not good.

Today, hard work can look very different. We are able to work more **efficiently** with the help of modern machinery and technology.

Modern workplaces are even using **Artificial Intelligence**, so that computers can do much more work for us. The workplace is changing, and technology will continue to be part of the **workplace** of the future. The question is: are we still working **hard** or are computers doing all the work for us?

## Exercises on unit 12

### 1 Choose two correct answers out of the five options given:

- 1-The synonym of the word "engaged" is ....(available – free –involved -busy – uninvolved)
- 2-The synonym of the word "mystery" is.....(known – puzzle – clear – fact-secret )
- 3-The antonym of the word "disappear" is.....(fade – dissolve – end – appear- exist)
- 4-The synonym of the word "abandon" is ....(leave – arrive -depart -continue – leave off)
- 5-The antonym of the word "guilty" is.....(proud – innocent – criminal – busy- clear)

### 2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The book's ..... is the conflict between love and duty.  
a. owner                                      b. theme                                      c. buyer                                      d. page
2. The..... was so complicated that I was totally confused by the time I was two chapters in.  
a. happiness   b. evil                                      c. offer                                      d. plot
3. There are obvious benefits in allowing each student to go at his own ..... .  
a. property                                      b. mind                                      c. pace                                      d. care
4. Ahmed was a/an .....in the linen factory of his uncle.  
a. imitator                                      b. weaver                                      c. inventor                                      d. server
5. You'll be glad to hear that Hani and I are ..... to be married.  
a. engaged                                      b. linked                                      c. hacked                                      d. connected
6. At last astronomers have ..... the mystery of the rings encircling the planet Saturn.  
a. mended                                      b. solved                                      c. repaired                                      d. clued
7. No one has ever been able to explain the ..... of the Bermuda Triangle.  
a. secretive                                      b. mysterious                                      c. mystery                                      d. secretly
8. I felt so ....., do you see, yet I felt so angry with myself for feeling that way.  
a. delighted                                      b. surprised                                      c. guilty                                      d. glad
9. Drugs won't make the pain ..... altogether, but they will help.  
a. appear                                      b. disappear                                      c. appearance                                      d. disappearance
10. "I've had a remarkable life", ' says the author who has ..... 35 books.  
a. discoveredb. published   c. found                                      d. activated
11. .... between people of different cultures are often extremely difficult.  
a. Contents   b. Connectors   c. Relationships                                      d. Ropes
12. We must put more money into the sport if we want to create the tennis .....of the future.  
a. beasts                                      b. legends                                      c. boastful                                      d. flourish
13. We ..... the pizza into three and had a slice each.  
a. distributed                                      b. separated                                      c. differentiate                                      d. divided

14. "He's only fourteen." "I know, but I think we can ..... him to look after the baby for an hour."  
a. hate      b. trust      c. haste      d. blame
15. The university should provide more facilities ..... disabled students.  
a. for      b. in      c. at      d. with
16. People may ..... painful childhood memories to protect themselves.  
a. announce      b. bury      c. advertise      d. magnify
17. Four other ..... children whose final days were not as comfortable were buried that same day.  
a. written      b. abandoned      c. oral      d. angry
18. All the necessary steps had been taken to ..... their safety.  
a. endanger      b. economize      c. ensure      d. rationalize
19. I had an ..... feeling that someone was following me.  
a. unpleasant      b. ugliness      c. united      d. used
20. Every time someone tries to explain the Internet to me, I get even more .....  
a. confuse      b. confused      c. confusing      d. confusion
21. Don't trust anyone who turns up at your door, unless they can ..... who they are.  
a. improve      b. prove      c. approve      d. disapprove
22. Mazin was pleased and invited Omar to his ..... for tea.  
a. college      b. bank      c. cottage      d. kindergarten
23. I strongly ..... that you get your brakes checked before you go on a long drive.  
a. ascend      b. bury      c. recommend      d. advice
24. I have my own room, but we ..... the kitchen and bathroom.  
a. contribute      b. sell      c. grant      d. share
25. Mona got on well with her friend, and felt that without her she might be .....  
a. line      b. lonely      c. lone      d. loneliness
26. The company is managed according to strict ..... and ethical principles.  
a. coral      b. moral      c. floral      d. immoral
27. Did you see the fish Dad caught? It was a .....!  
a. cake      b. monster      c. dead      d. make
28. His critics objected to the way he broke many of the ..... rules of art.  
a. traditional      b. local      c. mystery      d. secret
29. .... than go straight on to university, why not get some work experience first?  
a. Rather      b. More      c. Or      d. Quite
30. If you're ..... more than five times, you fail the course.  
a. attendant      b. wasteful      c. compared      d. absent
31. Mom and I are a lot ..... now than we were when I was a teenager.  
a. closed      b. closer      c. closing      d. open
32. Extensive ..... have documented the availability of coal in the United States.  
a. compositions      b. novels      c. stories      d. reviews
33. Life is good these days ..... to the past.  
a. comparison      b. compared      c. compare      d. comparing
34. I ..... care of my mother in the final months of her life.  
a. took      b. did      c. conducted      d. carried
35. Many experts ..... about the issue of global warming.  
a. care      b. concentrate      c. recommend      d. blend
36. A tropical bird builds large nests by ..... sticks and pieces of grass together.  
a. weaver      b. weaving      c. waving      d. wife
37. She is ..... sorry for what she has done.  
a. depth      b. deepen      c. deeply      d. deeper
38. She spent less time ..... about this matter.  
a. think      b. thinking      c. thought      d. to think
39. A page-..... is a type of book which is very exciting.  
a. turn      b. turning      c. turned      d. turner
40. He had deliberately ..... the illness from his boss.  
a. hide      b. hid      c. hidden      d. hiding

41. It's important to ..... everyone around you.  
a. respect    b. respected    c. respectable    d. respecting
42. Allow the dough to ..... for two hours before shaping it into a loaf.  
a. prove    b. proof    c. loaf    d. hoof
43. The writer ..... his first novel when he was 16.  
a. spoiled    b. plotted    c. established    d. built
44. Do you like the movie's ..... song?  
a. frame    b. blue    c. bleeding    d. theme
45. The way those children treat their parents is a .....  
a. rhyme    b. crime    c. present    d. gift
46. I won't ..... this project; I plan to see it through to the end.  
a. remain    b. foretell    c. abandon    d. plan
47. The hungry diners tucked into the meal with .....  
a. keep    b. hunger    c. abandon    d. distribute
48. A horse has four ..... - walk, trot, canter and gallop.  
a. engines    b. wheels    c. paces    d. faces
49. Sara isn't hungry. She is .....  
a. punctual    b. caring    c. full    d. bored
50. The ..... between the educated and the uneducated is becoming wider.  
a. divide    b. break    c. friendship    d. blackened
51. Ali was trying to phone his mother, but the line was .....  
a. engaged    b. broken    c. taken    d. lengthened
52. I'm reading a ..... with a detective as the main character.  
a. monster    b. monastery    c. mystery    d. miracle
53. Poachers are killing so many rhinos that they could ..... altogether.  
a. appear    b. disappear    c. ignore    d. steer
54. The young woman asked the hairdresser for a ..... to wear on her head.  
a. wave    b. weave    c. wire    d. wrinkle
55. Salah has great ..... as a football player and the determination that you need to succeed.  
a. skill    b. skull    c. skell    d. a skill
56. I began to realize that there was no ..... for me in life.  
a. wasteless    b. happiness    c. careless    d. peerless
57. The next election in my village will take ..... on April 6th.  
a. place    b. part    c. a part    d. a place
58. Stop feeling sorry ..... yourself and think about other people for a change.  
a. to    b. for    c. in    d. on
59. He felt a lot of ..... over hurting his brother.  
a. guilty    b. guilt    c. guiltless    d. guiltier
60. I thanked him for ..... the mystery to me.  
a. explaining    b. exploring    c. complaining    d. carving
61. When I returned home, I found that all my money had .....  
a. disappeared    b. hidden    c. widened    d. narrowed
62. He was set free because he was found not .....  
a. guilt    b. innocent    c. guilty    d. innocence
63. Twenty years after the event, his death remains a .....  
a. mystery    b. pastry    c. monastery    d. dentistry
64. I asked the ..... to make a new scarf for me.  
a. weaver    b. wave    c. weave    d. waver
65. The book's ..... revolves around a woman who is searching for her missing sister.  
a. plate    b. pot    c. pit    d. plot
65. I asked the ..... to make a new scarf for me.  
a. weaver    b. wave    c. weave    d. waver
- 66- Muslims ----- their dead under the ground in tombs or graves .  
a) bury    b) bear    c) pure    d) pearl

- 67- The pace was quite fast and the ----- is full of surprises.  
a) pace                      b) plot                      c) clot                      d) boycott
- 68- I couldn't stop ----- because I really wanted to know what was going to happen  
a) read                      b) to read                      c) to reading                      d) reading
- 69- I would recommend this book to anyone who enjoys ----- stories.  
a) mystery                      b) secret                      c) nursery                      d) secretarial
- 70- This is a very interesting story of a sad and ----- man .  
a) solo                      b) alone                      c) lonely                      d) happy
- 71- He finds ----- when he adopts a girl  
a) sorrow                      b) happiness                      c) anger                      d) illness
- 72- They were ----- to be married .There engagement party was wonderful  
a) married                      b) engaged                      c) busy                      d) easy
- 73- They are ----- in talks with the Irish government .  
a) married                      b) engaged                      c) busy                      d) easy
- 74-It is difficult to keep up with the rapid ----- of change.  
a) pace                      b) peace                      c) piece                      d) base
- 75- The novel lacks ----- .it develops too slowly .  
a) characters                      b) themes                      c) pace                      d) plot
- 76- The book is a page ----- .It is very exciting  
a) turn                      b) tuner                      c) turning                      d) turned
- 77-The role will be the biggest -----of his acting career .  
a) change                      b) charge                      c) challenge                      d) charm
- 78- The mother was worried and frightened when her little son ----- suddenly  
a) disappeared                      b) succeeded                      c) passed                      d) managed
- 79-Tthe disappearance of the ships in the Pacific is still a -----  
a) plot                      b) theme                      c) mystery                      d) mysterious
- 80- The jury found the defendant not ----- of the offence.  
a) guilty                      b) guiltily                      c) guilt                      d) innocently
- 81-The book is well-organised in terms of -----  
a) plotters                      b) plot                      c) pottery                      d) poetry

## Grammar

## MODAL VERBS OF DEDUCTION

الأفعال المساعدة الدالة على الاستنتاج والنصيحة والندم

**1- Must + inf. = I am sure**

لا بد أنه

- يستخدم (Must) للتعبير عن الاستنتاج المثبت القائم على دليل في المضارع

- You **must speak** good Arabic if you've lived here for 10 years. (I'm sure you speak good Arabic.)

**- Must + be + n. / adj.**

لا بد أنه

- He **must be** English. He speaks English well. (He is definitely English.)
- Ali **must be** happy. He has just won a gold medal. (I'm sure Ali is happy.)

## 2- Must ... ماضى..... Must have + pp.

- يعبر ( Must have + pp.) عن الاستنتاج المثبت القائم على دليل في الماضي

- It **must have been** cold there. There is snow on the ground in the photo.  
(It was definitely cold there)
- Passing his driving test **must have made** Ahmed very happy.  
(I'm sure passing his driving test made Ahmed very happy.)
- There **must have been** a sandstorm. The streets are covered in sand.
- She **called me from a friend's phone**. She **must have lost** her mobile phone.
- It **must have been** very windy during the night. There are branches all over the ground.

**3- Can't / Couldn't**

لا يمكن أن يكون

يعبر عن الاستنتاج المنفي القائم على دليل في المضارع

- He **can't be** Egyptian. He **doesn't speak** Arabic. (He is definitely not Arabic.)
- That **can't be** Kamal. He looks too old. (I'm sure you are not Kamal.)

**4- Can't / Couldn't ... ماضي..... Can't / Couldn't have + pp.**

تعبر ( Can't / Couldn't have + pp ) عن الاستنتاج المنفي القائم على دليل في الماضي

- Ali **can't have forgotten**. He's got a very good memory.
- They **can't have had** lunch. Their food is in the fridge.
- It's only 4 o'clock. The match **can't have finished**. it's too early already.  
(The match definitely hasn't finished early)
- Ali was not at the meeting. He **can't have read** my e-mail.  
(I'm sure he didn't read my e-mail.)
- You **couldn't have finished** that book already. (I'm sure you didn't finish it.)

**5- Might / May / could**

من المحتمل

للتعبير عن عدم التأكد ( الاحتمال ) في المضارع عندما لا يوجد دليل

- He **might be** French, but he is probably Italian. (it is possible that he is French)
- He **might / may be** at home. I'm not sure.

**6- Might / may ... ماضي..... Might / may have + pp.**

- Azza **wasn't** at school yesterday. She **might have had** a doctor's appointment..  
(It's possible that Azza had a doctor's appointment)
- He **might have rung** yesterday evening. (It is possible but I am not sure.)
- Going by car **might have taken** longer than going by train. (But it might not.)
- **could have + P.P.** ( أيضا عن شيء كان من الممكن حدوثه ولكنه لم يحدث لأننا لم نستغل الفرصة  
- تعبر ( could have + P.P. )  
- أحيانا يمكن أن تعبر الجملة عن الاستمرار وفي هذه الحالة نستخدم  
- He **was able to do** the job but he **didn't**. = He **could have done** the job.
- **must / can't / may/ might / could+ be + v.ing**
- What is Ali doing in his room? - I'm not sure. He **may be studying**.
- **must / can't / may/ might / could+ have been + v.ing**
- What was Linda doing? - She **must have been working** on her computer.

| with              | Present                         | Past                                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| I'm sure          | <b>must + مصدر</b>              | <b>must have + pp</b>                |
| I'm certain       | I'm sure he is a doctor.        | I think he recorded the song.        |
| I think           | He must be a doctor.            | He must have recorded the song.      |
| I believe         | <b>can't + مصدر</b>             | <b>can't / couldn't have + pp</b>    |
| I imagine         | I'm sure, he isn't the killer.  | I think he didn't go to the country. |
| certainly         | He can't be the killer.         | He can't have gone to the country.   |
| impossible        | <b>may + مصدر</b>               | <b>may have + pp</b>                 |
| not sure/certain  | It's probable he arrives early. | Perhaps she phoned me.               |
| probable/likely   | He may arrive early.            | She may have phoned me.              |
| uncertain/perhaps | <b>might + مصدر</b>             | <b>might have + pp</b>               |
| I don't Know      |                                 |                                      |

|                     |                             |                              |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| very not sure       |                             |                              |
| very uncertain      | It's possible he will come. | I don't think they went out. |
| possible/possibly   | He might come.              | They might have gone out.    |
| don't think/believe |                             |                              |

**Choose the correct answer:**

- His car is not here. He ..... have gone out.  
a) must                      b) should                      c) ought                      d) ought to
- I'd take an umbrella if I were you. It looks like it ..... rain.  
a) mustn't                      b) can't                      c) must                      d) may
- Perhaps Nada sent the postcard. She .....sent it.  
a) must have                      b) can't have                      c) might have                      d) might
- Nada..... been injured. There was blood on her face.  
a) must                      b) must have                      c) mustn't have                      d) can't have
- She's won prizes for her research. She ..... worked hard.  
a) mustn't have                      b) ought to have                      c) can't have                      d) must have
- Maha knows a lot about films. She .....go to the cinema a lot.  
a) must                      b) could                      c) can't                      d) might
- My father returned home very late. His car..... broken down.  
a) can't have                      b) must                      c) must have                      d) can't
- Have you looked next to your computer? I think you ..... have left your keys there.  
a) ought to                      b) couldn't                      c) can't                      d) might
- I can't believe you've been waiting all this time! You ..... be really bored.  
a) couldn't                      b) can't                      c) will                      d) must
- There..... be a meeting today because the director is ill.  
a) should                      b) can't                      c) must                      d) might
- The floor is wet. Someone..... water on the floor.  
a) must have spilt                      b) can't have spilt                      c) must spill                      d) may spill
- She..... studied really hard. She passed all her exams with excellent grades.  
a) might                      b) should have                      c) must have                      d) can't have
- Nada was in a very difficult situation. It .....easy for her.  
a) might have been                      b) might be                      c) can't have been                      d) can't be
- The teacher is angry with Sara. She..... have done her homework.  
a) must                      b) couldn't                      c) ought                      d) mustn't
- The bottle is empty. Someone .....the water.  
a) can't have drunk                      b) must have drunk                      c) may drink                      d) must drink
- You..... shouted at him. He'll never forgive you.  
a) can't have                      b) shouldn't have                      c) should have                      d) may have
- The ground is very dry and dusty. Farmers look very worried. It.... very dry this year.  
a) must have been                      b) can't have been                      c) mustn't have been                      d) might have been
- You .....finished that book already. You bought it only yesterday and it is very long.  
a) will have                      b) should have                      c) must have                      d) can't have
- He..... arrived by now. It's only a 20 minute journey.  
a) must have                      b) can't have                      c) shouldn't have                      d) oughtn't
- I don't like being in very small places. That .....why I have a phobia about lifts.  
a) must have been                      b) can't be                      c) must be                      d) can't have been
- The concert was fantastic. You really..... come.  
a) should have                      b) shouldn't have                      c) must have                      d) could have
- The boss is in a terrible mood. The meeting..... been good.  
a) can have                      b) must have                      c) shouldn't have                      d) can't have
- Most people praise the film. It..... be boring.  
a) should                      b) might                      c) can't                      d) must



24. Sarah..... have been so happy when she found out she was being promoted.  
a) ought to                      b) can't                      c) must                      d) might
25. I loved dolls until I was about five, so fear of dolls..... a phobia I was born with.  
a) must have been    b) can't be                      c) must be                      d) can't have been
26. I had to wait for an hour for a bus. There..... have been an accident or maybe a strike.  
a) ought                      b) can't                      c) must                      d) might
27. The test took three hours to be answered. It .....easy.  
a) must be                      b) can't have been                      c) might be                      d) must have been
28. He..... have bought a new car. He doesn't have any money.  
a) must                      b) can't                      c) may                      d) ought
29. I hated opening cupboards because I..... a spider in them.  
a) can't have found                      b) might find                      c) might have found                      d) don't find
30. Adel did no revision for the exam but he's passed. I think he..... have cheated  
a) might                      b) should                      c) ought to                      d) can't
31. I'm not sure whether I can lend you any money. I .....have enough.  
a) might not                      b) may                      c) mustn't                      d) must
32. Ali..... have travelled to Alexandria this morning. He is ill in bed!  
a) can't                      b) may                      c) must                      d) shouldn't
33. You..... have been delighted when you heard you'd won the prize.  
a) could                      b) shouldn't                      c) must                      d) can't
34. It .....cold in this photo. They are all wearing coats!  
a) must have been    b) can't have been                      c) mustn't have been                      d) might have been
35. Most of the pupils can't understand this lesson. It..... difficult.  
a) can't be                      b) can't have been                      c) must be                      d) must have been
36. The tourists are looking on the ground. They ..... something.  
a) can't have lost    b) might have lost                      c) mustn't have lost                      d) should have lost
37. Amgad ..... forgotten. He's got a very good memory.  
a) should                      b) can't                      c) might                      d) must
38. We'll try to get there early but we..... arrive late if there's a lot of traffic.  
a) may                      b) can't                      c) could have                      d) should
39. The man I saw with you yesterday..... Ali. Ali is in Alex.  
a) mustn't                      b) must be                      c) can't have been                      d) must have been
40. I'm not sure but I think I..... have left my book at school.  
a) can                      b) will                      c) might                      d) should
41. He drives an expensive car. He..... have a good job.  
a) should                      b) can't                      c) might                      d) must
42. He ..... missed his train. He'll have to wait two hours until the next one.  
a) must have                      b) mustn't have                      c) should have                      d) oughtn't have
43. Look, it's raining! I..... have brought an umbrella.  
a) ought to                      b) can't                      c) must                      d) shouldn't
44. It .....early morning. The sun was high in the sky.  
a) must have been    b) can't have been                      c) mustn't have been                      d) might have been
45. The man..... frightened. He behaved normally and looked relaxed.  
a) might have felt                      b) must have felt                      c) can't have felt                      d) mustn't have felt
46. It..... winter in this photo. There are leaves on all the trees!  
a) might have been                      b) must have been                      c) can't have been                      d) mustn't have been
47. He ..... near here because he comes to work on foot.  
a) must have lived    b) must live                      c) mustn't live                      d) must be live
48. Hassan thinks that he did very well in the exam. He..... get the best results in the class!  
a) shouldn't                      b) should                      c) can't                      d) might
49. Hany is afraid of open spaces. He .....at the mall.  
a) might have been                      b) should have been                      c) could have been                      d) can't be
50. There..... people in the woods because he heard noises.

- a) can't have been    b) mustn't have been    c) might have been    d) must have been  
 51. I can't find my book. I ..... it on the bus.  
 a) can't have left    b) must leave    c) may leave    d) may have left  
 52. She ..... gone to school today. It's Friday.  
 a) must have    b) can't have    c) may have    d) should have  
 53. A: Can I have some sweets? I am hungry.    B: You ..... be hungry. You have just had dinner.  
 a) can't    b) must    c) should    d) may  
 54. Tom ..... written this, because it is in French and he doesn't know French.  
 a) might have    b) may have    c) can't have    d) must have  
 55. He looks so tired. He ..... worked very hard.  
 a) can't have    b) should have    c) must have    d) might have  
 56. He ..... be a very clever boy. He has entered the university very easily.  
 a) may    b) can't    c) must    d) should  
 57. She teaches maths at the university. She ..... be stupid.  
 a) may    b) must    c) should    d) can't  
 58. Sally looks sad and worried. She ..... a problem with something.  
 a) must have    b) can't have    c) may have had    d) should have  
 59. Bob ..... at school because I haven't seen him there today.  
 a) must have been    b) can't have had    c) may have been    d) shouldn't be  
 60. Mr. Adel hasn't come to work yet. He has never been late for work. He ..... the bus.  
 a) might miss    b) must have missed    c) can't have missed    d) should miss

## Chapter 12

**Jim Hawkins:**

**Silver** went back to the pirates and said, "I've found out that the doctor's men have the ship. I don't know where it is, but when we find the treasure, we'll find the ship. That will give us the advantage. We'll keep Jim with us before then. When we go home, we can leave him on the island."

The pirates looked happy with this news, but it worried me. What was **Silver** really planning? When he found the treasure, was he going to help Dr. **Livesy** and Mr. **Trelawney** or these terrible pirates? I did not know.

We all left the fort. The pirates were carrying supplies, spades and their weapons. We then got into the small boats and looked at the map to see where we should go. We took the boats down a river, then we left them and walked through some tall trees. The pirates attached me to **Silver** with a rope so that I could not escape, and we walked up a hill. We walked for many hours. It was very hot, but this side of the island was very beautiful, with many flowers and birds. Then we heard a shout. **Morgan** was looking at something with a frightened face. It was the skeleton of a man lying on the ground. "The skeleton is pointing north!" said **Morgan**. "He is," said **Silver**. "I think this was one of **Flint**'s games. He killed the man and put him there." "**Flint** was a terrible man," said **Morgan**. The pirates looked worried and when we continued, they were much quieter. Suddenly, we heard a voice singing from the trees in front of us. "That sounds like **Flint**!" said **George**. "**Flint**'s dead," said **Silver**. "It is someone playing a trick." Then the voice called out, "McGraw, bring me a drink, please!"

"That was what **Flint** said, just before he died!" said **Morgan**.

Now the pirates all looked very frightened.

"Listen men," said **Silver**. "There's a lot of treasure near here. I don't think that was **Flint**. I think it was **Ben Gun**." "I thought he was dead, too, but I'm not frightened of him," said **George**.

The pirates looked happier and continued walking, although Dick looked tired and ill. Soon we saw a very tall tree. The tree was on our map and we knew that

we were now close to the treasure. I could see that all the pirates were excited. **Silver**, too, looked different. His eyes looked crazy and dangerous, and I thought he would do anything to go home safely with the treasure.

The pirates all ran to the bottom of the tree. **George** was in front of them, but he suddenly stopped with a cry. "Look!" he said.

We saw what he was pointing at. Near the bottom of the tree there was a big hole in the ground. Someone had been there before us. The treasure was gone!

The pirates said nothing, but I could see that **Silver** was already making a plan. "Take this, and be ready for trouble," he said quietly, and he gave me a gun. Then the pirates all jumped into the hole and started digging with their spades. Perhaps there was treasure still there. **Morgan** found a gold coin and held it up for the others to see.

"One coin? You told us there was seven hundred thousand pounds here, **Silver**!" shouted **George** angrily. "You knew about this, didn't you?"

The pirates looked very angry. They climbed out of the other side of the hole, looking dirty and hot.

"Let's get them, men!" said **George**.

Suddenly, there was the sound of guns from the trees. Two of the pirates fell down and the other three started to run. We were safe! **Dr Livesy**, Gray and **Ben Gun** came out from the trees.

"Thank you, doctor," said **Silver**. "You saved us. And look, it's **Ben Gun**!"

**Ben Gun** said hello to **Silver**, but I could see that he was frightened of him.

As we walked back to the boats, we heard how **Ben Gun** had helped us. **Ben Gun** had dug up the treasure and put it in a cave in the north of the island before we arrived on the **Hispaniola**. **Ben Gun** told all of this to **Dr Livesy**, when the doctor gave him some cheese. The doctor then thought of a plan. He gave the map to **Silver** because he knew it was useless. Then he took his friends up to the cave, where **Ben Gun** had supplies as well as the treasure.

When he knew that **Silver** was taking me and the men to look for the treasure, the doctor came back with **Ben Gun** and Gray. To slow the pirates down, **Ben Gun** sang a song to frighten them. This had given the others time to wait for the pirates by the hole.

After a few hours, we reached the coast again. **Ben Gun** helped **Gray** to destroy one of the boats so that the other pirates could not use it. We took the other boat around the island. After three miles, I was surprised to see the **Hispaniola**! The wind had blown it from the beach and it was sailing empty on the sea. We helped **Gray** to get onto the ship so that he could look after it, and we continued to the beach. We then climbed the hill to **Ben Gun**'s cave, where **Trelawney** was looking after Captain **Smollett**.

"**Silver**," **Trelawney** said when he saw him. "You are a pirate and a thief, but the doctor says that you have helped us. I must thank you."

**Silver** said nothing, but he smiled.

Inside the big cave, **Captain Smollett** was lying by a fire. Behind him, I could see lots of coins and gold. It was **Flint**'s treasure.

The next morning, we began to take the treasure down the hill to the boat. It was heavy work, and it took us days to move all the coins and gold.

We knew there were still three pirates on the island. We looked for them all the time, but we did not see them again. We decided to leave the island without them, but we left some food and medicine.

It was a difficult journey back on the **Hispaniola** because the crew was so small. **Captain Smollett** lay on his bed and told us what to do. After a few days, we reached a town in South America, where we went to find more people for our crew. When we returned to the **Hispaniola** later that day, **Ben Gun** told us that **Silver** had taken a boat and some money. He was gone, but nobody was sad about that. With a bigger crew, it was easier to return to Bristol. The treasure helped us all back in England. **Captain Smollett** stopped working and Gray decided to buy his own ship.

**Ben Gun** quickly spent all of his money.

I have a comfortable life now. I often think about the island and Long John **Silver**, but I never saw him again.

### Questions and answers

1. What do you think of Silver?

- He was a bad man.

2. How do you think Jim felt while staying with the pirates?

- He was frightened as they were bad people.

3. Why do you think Silver gave Jim a gun?

- He perhaps thought the pirates would attack them because there was no treasure

4. Why do you think Morgan said, "Flint was a terrible man"?

- They found the skeleton of a man. It was pointing north and they thought Flint did this to the man as a game. He was not a good man.

5. Why do you think Ben Gun pretended to be Flint?

- I think he wanted to frighten the pirates and slow them down.

6. Why do you think Livesy gave the map to Silver?

- As he knew Ben Gun hid the treasure.

7. Were you surprised that Ben Gun told Livesy about the place of the treasure? Why?

- As the treasure was useless on the island. It would be useful if they left the island with it.

8. Do you think that the pirates will find the treasure using the map?

- No, they won't find the treasure using the map. Ben Gun had the treasure in a cave.

9. Were you surprised when Silver escaped from the boat? Why?

- No as he knew he would go to trial.

10. Do you think the story ended happily for Jim?

- Yes. As he had a comfortable life back to England.

10. Why do you think the group looked for the remaining pirates?

- I think they wanted to take them back to England for trial.

11. Why do you think the group left food and medicine to the pirates?

- I think they didn't want them to starve on the island.

12. What do you think the group would do if they find the three escaped pirates?

- If they found them one day, they would probably want to send them for trial

## Test unit twelve

1 Choose two correct answers out of the five options given:

1- The words "....." and "....." have the same meaning as the word "annoying"

a) disturbing      b) disgusting      c) common      d) familiar      e) troublesome

2. The opposites of the word "useful" are ..... and .....

a) beneficial      b) horrible      c) harmful      d) unfamiliar      e) useless

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- We shouldn't ..... our parents and we should take care of them .

a) abandon      b) respect      c) obey      d) help

2- I can't put the page - ..... down I must finish it tonight.

a) book      b) tuner      c) turning      d) turns

3- The main ..... of this film are brilliant actors

a) view      b) scene      c) characters      d) director

- 4- The artificial limbs can ----- the problem of losing the arms or the legs.  
a) solve                      b) solution                      c) solver                      d) dissolve
- 5- Our farming always depends ..... the Nile water.  
a) from                      b) of                      c) in                      d) on
- 6- It is always best to accompany ..... friends to help you in time of need.  
a- reliable    b- cripple                      c- foolish                      d- lazy
- 7- The criminal was sent to prison after he had been found -----  
a- innocent                      b- guilt                      c- guilty                      d- not guilty
- 8- The newspaper boy ----- and we looked for him in the neighbouring area  
a- sent                      b- disappeared                      c- found                      d - lost
- 9- The ----- of the story is serious and it wants to warn people against pollution  
a- pros                      b- merit                      c- advantage    d- theme
- 10- The actress is ----- to the director of the film and they are going to be married  
a - engaged                      b- busy                      c- acted                      d- seen
- 11- I don't know why she is absent . She ----- ill.  
a- must be    b- can't be                      c- might be                      d- will be
- 12- Who can this problem ( solved - be solved - have solved - had solved ) by?
- 13- My friend looks happy . He ( must - must have - can't - an't have ) failed
- 14- The class is quiet . The teacher ( must - can't - must have - can't have ) be in the class
- 15- The streets are muddy . It ( can't - can't have - must - must have ) rained heavily .
- 16- The fans left the match before its end . It ( must -can't -might -may) have been interesting

**Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Which job do you want to do when you leave school ? 150 years ago, there were not many choices. Some people took academic jobs such as becoming a lawyer or an accountant. Others took jobs that needed vocational skills, such as being a farmer. Today, however, there are hundreds of new kinds of jobs which we did not have just ten years ago. This is good news for young people today because there are many new and exciting jobs that they can do.

An example is computer programming for mobile phone companies. Mobile phones are developing every year, and the phone companies need people to help to develop them even more. Another new job is something called library science. This is knowing how to understand information on the internet. This is very important for business which have a lot of information about their customers and want to know how to use it, so they can sell them things. So, there are a lot of opportunities for work in the future, but they may not be the jobs that you have heard of before.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- 17- The best title for this passage is .....  
Ⓐ Vocational jobs                      Ⓑ Academic jobs                      Ⓒ Unwanted jobs                      Ⓓ Ever-changing jobs
- 18- Which of the following sentences is CORRECT ?  
Ⓐ Jobs today are similar to those in the past.                      Ⓑ Jobs in the future will be more traditional.  
Ⓒ Jobs in the past were only vocational.                      Ⓓ Jobs in the future will be different from those in these days.
- 19- The main idea of the passage is that jobs in the future .....  
Ⓐ might not exist today                      Ⓑ will be vocational jobs  
Ⓒ will be the same as 10 years ago                      Ⓓ will be the same as 150 years ago
- 20- Which of the following jobs couldn't people do 150 years ago ?  
Ⓐ Academic jobs                      Ⓑ Computer programming                      Ⓒ Vocational jobs                      Ⓓ Farming
- 21- According to the passage, 'customers' are people who .....  
Ⓐ repair                      Ⓑ manufacture                      Ⓒ analyse                      Ⓓ buy
- 22- The best sentence which summarises the passage is .....  
Ⓐ academic jobs will prevail in the future.  
Ⓑ Pilots and astronauts will be the most needed jobs in the future.  
Ⓒ Jobs in the future will be connected with computer and technology.  
Ⓓ Vocational jobs will not exist in the future.
- 23- The writer thinks that we should .....  
Ⓐ change our jobs                      Ⓑ prepare children for future jobs  
Ⓒ search for new jobs                      Ⓓ refuse our recent jobs
- 24- According to the passage, who can benefit well from new jobs ?  
Ⓐ old people                      Ⓑ youth                      Ⓒ retired people                      Ⓓ infants

**A) Choose the best Arabic translation :**

**1- Most of the working women in Egypt shoulder many responsibilities, dividing their time between their work and bringing up their children.**

- Ⓐ غالبية السيدات العاملات في مصر تأخذن مسئوليات عديدة موحدة ما بين عملهن وتعليم أطفالهن .  
 Ⓑ كثيرًا من السيدات العاملات في مصر تحملن مسئوليات عديدة فأوقاتهن منقسمة ما بين عملهن وتربية أطفالهن .  
 Ⓒ معظم السيدات العاملات في مصر تتحملن مسئوليات عديدة فيقسمن وقتهن ما بين عملهن وتربية أطفالهن .  
 Ⓓ عددًا من العاملات في مصر قد تتحملن مسئوليات فأوقاتهن محددة ما بين عملهن وتربية أطفالهن .

**B) Choose the best English translation :**

**٢- تعتبر الشائعات أحد العوامل التي تؤدي لعدم استقرار المجتمع، وخاصة إذا كانت تؤدي جميع أفراد المجتمع .**

- Ⓐ Rumours are one of the main elements that lead to the society's stability, especially if they hurt all the society's members.  
 Ⓑ Roars are one of the main elements that lead to the society's instability, particularly if they hurt all the society's organs.  
 Ⓒ Roars are one of the main elements that lead to the society's instability, secretly if they hurt all the social members.  
 Ⓓ Rumours are one of the main elements that lead to the society's instability, especially if they hurt all the society's members.

**The Novel**

**1.What do you think of Silver?**

- He was a bad man.

**2. Why do you think Ben Gun pretended to be Flint?**

- I think he wanted to frighten the pirates and slow them down.

**3. Why do you think the group looked for the remaining pirates?**

- I think they wanted to take them back to England for trial.

**4) Write a paragraph of about one hundred words about one of:**

*Over population*